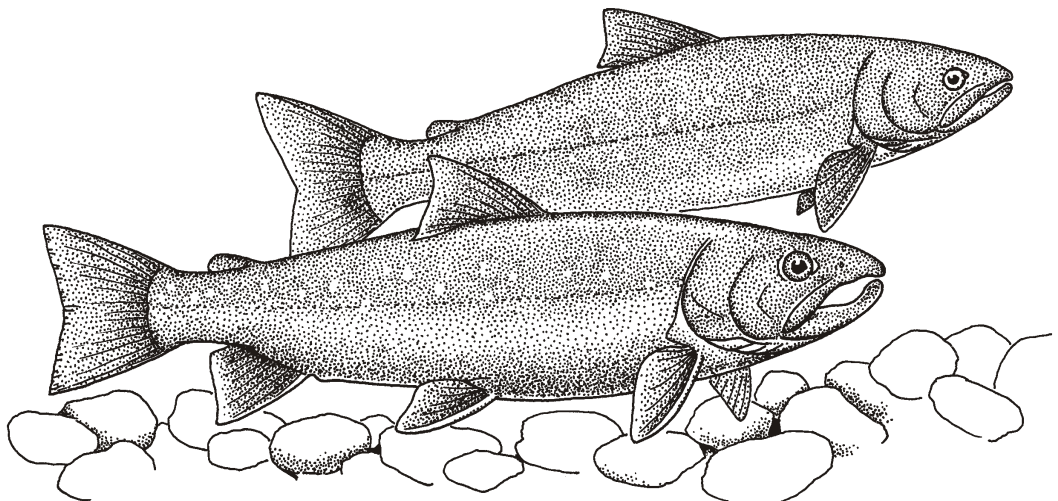


Draft Recovery Plan for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of Bull Trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*)

Volume II (of II)
Olympic Peninsula Management Unit



Cover illustration by Kendal Morris, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service; used with permission.

Draft Recovery Plan
for the
Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct
Population Segment
of
Bull Trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*)

Volume II (of II)
Olympic Peninsula Management Unit

(May 2004)

Region 1
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Portland, Oregon

Approved: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Regional Director, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

Date: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

DISCLAIMER

Recovery plans delineate reasonable actions that are believed necessary to recover and/or protect the species. Recovery plans are prepared by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and, in this case, with the assistance of recovery teams, State, Federal, and Tribal agencies, and others. Objectives will be attained and any necessary funds made available subject to budgetary and other constraints affecting the parties involved, as well as the need to address other priorities. Recovery plans do not necessarily represent the views or the official positions or indicate the approval of any individuals or agencies involved in the plan formulation, other than the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Recovery plans represent the official position of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service *only* after they have been signed by the Director or Regional Director as *approved*. Approved recovery plans are subject to modification as dictated by new findings, changes in species status, and the completion of recovery actions.

Literature citation of this document should read as follows:

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2004. Draft Recovery Plan for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of Bull Trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*). Volume II (of II): Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Portland, Oregon. 277 + xvi pp.

Electronic copies of this recovery plan are available at:

<<http://pacific.fws.gov/ecoservices/endangered/recovery/default.htm>> and also at <<http://endangered.fws.gov/recovery/index.html>>.

Note to readers: A glossary of technical terms is provided in Appendix 6 of this plan. Terms provided in the glossary are denoted with a superscript symbol (†) the first time they appear in the plan.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The following individuals contributed to the development of the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit Draft Recovery Plan for Bull Trout:

Recovery Team for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit of Bull Trout:

Carol Aubry	U.S. Forest Service
Sam Brenkman	Olympic National Park
Marty Ereth	Skokomish Tribe
Bill Freymond	Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife
Joel Frudenthal	Clallam County
Marc McHenry	U.S. Forest Service
John Meyer	Olympic National Park
Mark Mobbs	Quinault Indian Nation
Larry Ogg	U.S. Forest Service
Dean Smith	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Shelley Spalding	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Steve Thiesfeld	Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife

Additional Contributors and Reviewers:

Ken Berg	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Scott Chitwood	Jamestown S'Klallam Tribe
Martha Jensen	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Michael McHenry	Lower Elwha S'Klallam Tribe
Jim Michaels	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
L. Karolee Owens	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
Jill Silver	Hoh Tribe
Sewell Young	Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The Olympic Peninsula Management Unit is one of two management units[†] comprising the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment[†] of bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*). The overall recovery implementation strategy for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment is to integrate with ongoing Tribal, State, local, and Federal management and partnership efforts at the watershed[†] or regional scales. This coordination will maximize the opportunity for complementary actions, eliminate redundancy, and make the best use of available resources for bull trout and salmon recovery.

Current Species Status

We, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, issued a final rule listing the Coastal-Puget Sound and St. Mary-Belly River Distinct Population Segments as threatened on November 1, 1999 (64 FR 58910). This final rule resulted in all bull trout within the coterminous United States being listed as threatened, as three additional distinct population segments had earlier been listed separately (the Klamath River, Columbia River, and Jarbidge River Distinct Population Segments; 63 FR 31647, 64 FR 17110). As provided in the final listing rule, however, we are continuing to refer to the original distinct population segments for the purposes of recovery planning and consultation (64 FR 58910). The Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment is significant to the species as a whole because it contains the only anadromous[†] forms of bull trout in the coterminous United States, thus, occurring in a unique ecological setting. Also unique to this population segment is the overlap in distribution with Dolly Varden, another native char[†] species extremely similar in appearance to bull trout, but distinct genetically.

The Olympic Peninsula Management Unit includes all watersheds within the Olympic Peninsula and the nearshore marine waters of the Pacific Ocean, Strait of Juan de Fuca, and Hood Canal. Bull trout, which are distributed throughout most of the major watersheds and associated tributary systems within this management unit, exhibit anadromous, adfluvial[†], fluvial[†], and possibly resident[†] life history patterns. The Olympic Peninsula Management Unit consists of 6 core areas[†] (a core area consists of one or more local populations[†] of bull

trout and their habitat), with a total of 10 local populations and 2 potential local populations[†] distributed among the core areas.

Recovery Priority

The recovery priority number for bull trout in the coterminous United States is 9C, on a scale of 1C (highest) to 18 (lowest), indicating: 1) taxonomically, we are treating these populations as distinct population segments of the species; 2) the bull trout is subject to a moderate degree of threat; and 3) the potential for recovery is considered high. The “C” indicates the potential for conflict with human activities during recovery (USFWS 1983a,b).

Habitat Requirements and Limiting Factors

Bull trout have more specific habitat requirements than most other salmonids. Habitat components that influence bull trout distribution and abundance include water temperature, cover, channel form and stability, valley form, spawning and rearing substrate, and migratory corridors[†]. Cold water temperatures play an important role in determining bull trout habitat, as these fish are primarily found in colder streams (below 15 degrees Celsius; 59 degrees Fahrenheit), and spawning habitats are generally characterized by temperatures that drop below 9 degrees Celsius (48 degrees Fahrenheit) in the fall. All life history stages of bull trout are associated with complex forms of cover, including large woody debris[†], undercut banks, boulders, and pools. Maintaining bull trout habitat requires stability of stream channels and maintenance of natural flow patterns. Additionally, since bull trout are iteroparous (they survive to spawn year after year) and many populations are migratory, these fish therefore require two-way passage up and downstream, not only for repeat spawning but also for foraging. Therefore even dams or other barriers with fish passage facilities may be a factor in isolating bull trout populations if they do not provide adequate two-way passage for subadults and adults.

Within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, historical and current land use activities and fisheries management have impacted bull trout. Some of the historical activities, especially water diversions, hydropower development, forestry, agriculture, fisheries management, and residential and urban

development within the core areas, may have significantly reduced important migratory populations. Lasting effects from some, but not all, of these early land and water developments still act to limit bull trout production in core areas. Threats from current activities are also present in all core areas of the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Land and water management activities that depress bull trout populations and degrade habitat in this management unit include some aspects of operation and maintenance of dams and other diversion structures, forest management practices, agriculture practices, road construction and maintenance, and residential development and urbanization. Dams and diversion structures impede or limit migration, entrain[†] individuals, and impair downstream habitat. Forestry activities impact bull trout through decreased recruitable large woody debris[†], increased water temperatures from reduced shading, lack of pools and habitat complexity, and increased sedimentation from timber harvesting on unstable slopes and road construction. Agriculture practices impact bull trout through added inputs of nutrients, pesticides, herbicides, sediment, reduced riparian[†] vegetation, decreased recruitable large woody debris, and reduced habitat complexity by diking, stream channelization[†], and bank hardening. Road construction and maintenance impact bull trout through added channel constrictions, impassible culverts, bank hardening, sedimentation, reduction in riparian shading, contaminant inputs, and impervious surfaces. Development and urbanization impact bull trout through reduced water quality, changed hydrology, reduced riparian shading, sedimentation, and reduced channel complexity from increased bank hardening and channel constrictions. Historical and current incidental mortality to bull trout from Tribal and recreational fisheries are considered a significant threat to populations on the Olympic Peninsula. The presence of nonnative species[†] such as brook trout continue to pose a threat through competition, hybridization[†], and potential predation in some core areas.

Recovery Strategy

Presently bull trout are listed as threatened across their range within the lower 48 states (64 FR 58910). Prior to the coterminous listing, five distinct population segments of bull trout were identified. Although these bull trout population segments are disjunct and geographically isolated from one another, they include the entire distribution of bull trout within the United States, therefore a coterminous listing was found to be appropriate in accordance with our policy

on the designation of distinct population segments (61 FR 4722). As provided in the final listing rule, we are continuing to use the term “distinct population segments” for the purposes of recovery planning and consultation (64 FR 58910).

A delisting determination can only be made on a “listable entity” under the Endangered Species Act (Act). Listable entities include species, subspecies, or distinct population segments of vertebrate animals, as defined by the Act and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Policy (61 FR 4722). Because bull trout were listed at the coterminous level in 1999, currently delisting can only occur at the coterminous level (64 FR 58910). In the future, if warranted by additional information, and if the Coastal-Puget Sound population is reconfirmed as meeting the definition of a distinct population segment under a regulatory rulemaking, delisting may be considered separately for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of bull trout once it has achieved a recovered state (61 FR 4722).

The recovery of the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of bull trout will depend upon the achievement of recovery goals and criteria for the entire distinct population segment. Maintenance of fully functioning core areas across the range of bull trout within the population segment will require that each of the two management units that comprise this distinct population segment contribute to the success of this effort. In keeping with the goal of fostering effective management and recovery of bull trout at the local level, we have developed separate recovery plans for each of these management units, and established specific “recovery targets” for each management unit that will be used to guide bull trout recovery within the distinct population segment as a whole.

Here we define the recovery criteria for the delisting of the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of bull trout as currently delineated. The site-specific strategies, recovery actions, and recovery targets for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit are presented in Part II of this plan. The Puget Sound Management Unit is addressed in Volume I of the Draft Recovery Plan for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of Bull Trout.

Recovery Goal for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment

The goal of this recovery plan is to **ensure the long-term persistence of self-sustaining, complex interacting groups[†] of bull trout distributed across the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment, so that the species can be delisted.**

Recovery Criteria for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment

The Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment will be considered recovered when all core areas are fully functional, as measured by parameters addressing the distribution, abundance, productivity (stable or increasing adult population trend), and connectivity (including the potential for expression of all life history traits) of bull trout. The recovery actions identified in this plan are designed to sufficiently control or eliminate the threats to bull trout such that the recovery criteria may be attained for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment. The conditions for recovery are identified in the following criteria:

1. The biological and ecological function of the 14 identified core areas (6 in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit and 8 in the Puget Sound Management Unit) for bull trout within the distinct population segment has been restored. The components of fully functioning core areas include:

- a) Habitat sufficiently maintained or restored to provide for the persistence of broadly distributed local populations supporting the migratory life form within each core area.** The term “broadly distributed” implies that local populations are able to access and are actively using habitat that fully provides for spawning, rearing, foraging, migrating, and overwintering needs at recovered abundance levels. An actual quantitative estimate of the amount of habitat that will be required to meet this criterion is unknown at this time; the adequacy of habitat restoration and management efforts must be measured indirectly by criteria 1b through 1d. The currently identified local populations that will be used as a measure of broad distribution across the distinct population segment are detailed in the recovery targets set for each of the two management units.

- b) Adult bull trout are sufficiently abundant to provide for the persistence and viability of core areas; this level of abundance is estimated to be 16,500 adult bull trout across all core areas.**

Resident life history forms are not included in this estimate, but are considered a research need. As more data is collected, recovered population estimates will be revised to more accurately reflect both the migratory and resident life history components. The recovery team[†] has initially set abundance targets conservatively if there was limited available information for constituent core areas; these will likely be revised as new information becomes available. The recovered abundance levels for the currently identified core areas in the distinct population segment are detailed in the recovery targets set for each of the two management units.

- c) Measures of bull trout abundance within all core areas show stable or increasing trends based on 10 to 15 years (representing at least 2 bull trout generations) of monitoring data.** Details are provided in the recovery targets for each of the two management units.

- d) Habitat within, and where appropriate, between core areas, is connected so as to provide for the potential of the full expression of migratory behavior (particularly anadromy), allow for the refounding[†] of extirpated populations, and provide for the potential of genetic exchange between populations.** Meeting this criterion requires that passage has been restored or improved, and in some cases further evaluated, at specific barriers identified as inhibiting recovery (including barriers due to physical obstructions, unsuitable habitat, and poor water quality). Known barriers to passage within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit include Cushman Dams 1 and 2, Elwha Dam and Glines Canyon Dam, the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife Dungeness Fish Hatchery, and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Quinault National Fish Hatchery. Known barriers to passage within the Puget Sound Management Unit include the Bellingham Diversion, Gorge Dam, Ross Dam, Tacoma Headworks diversion dam, and Howard Hansen Dam; the Baker River Dams and Electron and Buckley diversions are also in need of passage

improvement. Details regarding these specific barriers are provided in the recovery targets set for each of the two management units.

Meeting this criterion also requires that conditions in both freshwater and nearshore marine foraging, migration, and overwintering habitats[†] are maintained and/or restored to the level that fully support an adequate prey base, especially for the anadromous forms, as well as the other identified components (distribution, abundance, and trend) for fully functional core areas within the Coastal-Puget Sound population segment.

2. A monitoring plan has been developed and is ready for implementation, to cover a minimum of 5 years post-delisting, to ensure the ongoing recovery of the species and the continuing effectiveness of management actions.

Recovery targets for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit:

- 1. Maintain or expand the current distribution of bull trout in the six identified core areas.** The 10 currently identified local populations (Skokomish (2), Dungeness (2), Elwha (1), Hoh (2), Quinault (2), Queets (1)) will be used as a measure of broadly distributed spawning and rearing habitat within these core areas. In addition, spawning distribution in the two potential local populations that are essential to recovery (one in the Skokomish core area, one in the Elwha) should be restored or confirmed.

- 2. Achieve minimum estimated abundance of at least 5,700 adult bull trout spawners in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, including at least 1,000 spawning adults in each of the Dungeness, Elwha, Hoh, Queets, and Quinault core areas and at least 700 spawning adults in the Skokomish core area.** Estimates of the recovered abundance for bull trout in this management unit are based on a recommended minimum abundance of 1,000 adult spawners to reduce the likelihood of genetic drift and the professional judgement of the recovery team. Estimates also included consideration of surveyed fish densities, habitats, and potential fish production after threats have been addressed. The recovered abundance level in the Skokomish core area will be limited by available

habitat and is estimated to be 700 adult spawners when the core area reaches its recovered potential.

3. **Restore adult bull trout to exhibit stable or increasing trends in abundance at or above the recovered abundance level within the core areas in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit based on 10 to 15 years (representing at least 2 bull trout generations) of monitoring data. (Note: generation time varies with demographic variables such as age at maturity, fecundity, frequency of spawning, and longevity, but typically falls in the range of 5 to 8 years for a single bull trout generation).**

4. **Restore connectivity by identifying and addressing specific existing and potential barriers to bull trout movement in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.** Connectivity criteria will be met when intact migratory corridors are present among all local populations within each core area, thus providing opportunity for genetic exchange and life history diversity. Several man-made barriers to bull trout migration exist within the management unit, and this recovery plan recommends actions to identify, assess, and reduce barriers to bull trout passage. Although achieving criteria 1 through 3 is expected to depend on providing passage at barriers (including barriers due to physical obstructions, unsuitable habitat, and water quality) throughout all core areas in the management unit, the intent of this criterion is to note specific barriers to address, or actions that must be performed to achieve recovery.

Recovery Actions

Recovery for bull trout will entail reducing threats to the long-term persistence of populations and their habitats, ensuring the security of multiple interacting groups of bull trout, and providing habitat and access to conditions that allow for the expression of various life history forms. Detailed actions specific to this management unit are provided in this plan; in broad terms, these actions include:

1. Protect, restore, and maintain suitable habitat conditions for bull trout.

2. Prevent and reduce negative effects of nonnative fishes and other nonnative taxa on bull trout.
3. Establish fisheries management goals and objectives for compatibility with bull trout recovery, and implement practices to achieve goals.
4. Characterize, conserve, and monitor genetic diversity and gene flow among local populations of bull trout.
5. Conduct research and monitoring to implement and evaluate bull trout recovery activities, consistent with an adaptive management approach using feedback from implemented, site-specific recovery tasks.
6. Use all available conservation programs and regulations to protect and conserve bull trout and bull trout habitat.
7. Assess the implementation of bull trout recovery by management units and revise management unit plans based on evaluations.

There are a number of research needs that have been identified for this management unit. A high priority goal for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit is to acquire more complete information on the current distribution and abundance of bull trout within each core area. Additional information is also needed on bull trout use of and distribution in estuarine and marine waters of the Olympic Peninsula.

Total Estimated Cost of Recovery

The total cost of bull trout recovery in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit is estimated at \$6.7 million spread over a 25-year recovery period, or an average of approximately \$268,000 per year. The estimate includes recovery actions associated with the Skokomish, Dungeness, Elwha, Hoh, Queets, and Quinault core areas as well as core habitats (including nearshore marine areas) and identified research needs (*e.g.*, Satsop River, Hoquiam River).

The total cost of bull trout recovery in the Puget Sound Management Unit is estimated at a minimum of \$68 million spread over a 25-year recovery timeframe, or an average of approximately \$2.7 million per year. The estimate includes recovery actions associated with the Chilliwack, Nooksack, Lower Skagit, Upper Skagit, Stillaguamish, Snohomish-Skykomish, Chester Morse, and

Puyallup core areas as well as core habitats[†] (including nearshore marine areas) and identified research needs (*e.g.*, upper Green River, upper Nisqually River).

The total cost of bull trout recovery in the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment is therefore estimated to be approximately \$74.7 million over 25 years. If the timeframe for recovery can be reduced, lower estimated costs would occur. Total costs include all funds expended, both public and private, and incorporate estimates of expenditures by local and State governments as well as Federal and private funds. These costs are attributed to bull trout conservation, but other aquatic species will also benefit.

Estimated Date of Recovery

Time required to achieve recovery depends on bull trout status, factors affecting bull trout, implementation and effectiveness of recovery actions, and responses to recovery actions. A tremendous amount of work will be required to restore impaired habitat, reconnect habitat, and eliminate threats from nonnative species. Three to 5 bull trout generations (15 to 25 years), or possibly longer, may be necessary before recovery is achieved.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	iii
LIST OF TABLES	xv
LIST OF FIGURES	xvi
PART I. COASTAL-PUGET SOUND DISTINCT POPULATION	
SEGMENT OF BULL TROUT	1
INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW	1
General Description and Life History	3
Habitat Characteristics	4
Diet	7
Reasons for Decline	9
SIGNIFICANCE OF THE COASTAL-PUGET SOUND DISTINCT POPULATION SEGMENT	10
RECOVERY PLAN TERMINOLOGY AND STRUCTURE	12
PART II. OLYMPIC PENINSULA MANAGEMENT UNIT	18
INTRODUCTION	18
Management Unit Designation	18
DISTRIBUTION AND ABUNDANCE	41
Status of Bull Trout at the Time of Listing	41
Current Distribution and Abundance	41
Summary of Status of Bull Trout and Importance of Core Areas in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit	61
Important Marine, Estuarine, and Coastal River Habitat for Bull Trout	63
REASONS FOR DECLINE	69
Dams	70
Forest Management Practices	74
Agriculture	84
Transportation Networks	88
Residential Development and Urbanization	96
Fisheries Management	102

Habitat Fragmentation and Isolation	109
Disease	110
Reasons for Decline: Summary	111
ONGOING CONSERVATION MEASURES	115
State of Washington	115
Federal Agencies	122
Native American Tribal Activities	130
Shared Strategy for Puget Sound	131
Hood Canal Coordinating Council	131
Dungeness River Agricultural Water Users Association	132
STRATEGY FOR RECOVERY	133
Recovery Goals and Objectives	134
Recovery Targets for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit	142
Research Needs	147
RECOVERY ACTIONS	155
Structure of the Recovery Actions Narrative	155
Recovery Actions Narrative Outline	156
IMPLEMENTATION SCHEDULE	189
REFERENCES	208
Literature Cited	208
In Literature	228
Personal Communications	234
APPENDIX 1.	
Olympic National Park: Angler effort and incidental catch records of bull trout in selected streams on the Olympic Peninsula.	238
APPENDIX 2.	
State of Washington’s 303(d) list for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit	242
APPENDIX 3.	
Linkage between recovery actions and threats (“Reasons for Decline”) for bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit	247

APPENDIX 4.

Effective Population Size and Recovery Planning 252

APPENDIX 5.

Federal Legislation, Activities and Guidelines Affecting Bull Trout
Recovery 256

APPENDIX 6.

Glossary of Technical Terms 265

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: Olympic Peninsula core areas; currently identified local populations;
foraging, migration and overwintering habitat; and research needs areas
for bull trout. 22

Table 2. Native freshwater fish in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit ... 27

Table 3. Known spawning streams in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit
..... 46

Table 4. Relative gill-netting effort at river mouths or estuaries with gill-net
fisheries based on available data 106

Table 5. Summary of reasons for decline of bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula
Management Unit 114

Table 6. Summary of the recovery targets for bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula
Management Unit 144

Table 7. Mean catch of bull trout per hour as reported by anglers in several
Olympic Peninsula Rivers. 240

Table 8. Estimated total catch of bull trout from the Queets and Salmon Rivers
during the winter steelhead season of December–April, 1999–2000
through 2001– 2002 seasons. 241

Table 9. Estimated hours of fishing by recreational anglers, Queets and Salmon
Rivers during the 1999–2000 through 2001–2002 winter steelhead seasons
..... 241

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1. The Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment (DPS) of bull trout, showing the division of the population segment into two management units. 2

Figure 2. Olympic Peninsula Management Unit showing the six identified core areas; important foraging, migration, and overwintering habitats (FMO); and research needs areas (RN) for bull trout. 20

Figure 3. Skokomish core area for bull trout. 29

Figure 4. Quinault core area for bull trout. 32

Figure 5. Queets core area for bull trout. 34

Figure 6. Hoh core area for bull trout. 35

Figure 7. Elwha core area for bull trout. 38

Figure 8. Dungeness core area for bull trout. 40

Figure 9. Annual peak count of adult bull trout in the North Fork Skokomish River, Olympic National Park, 1973 to 2002 50

PART I. COASTAL-PUGET SOUND DISTINCT POPULATION SEGMENT OF BULL TROUT

INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW

Bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*), members of the family Salmonidae, are fish native to the Pacific Northwest and western Canada. Trout and salmon relatives in the genus *Salvelinus*, such as bull trout, are often generally referred to as “char[†].” Bull trout occur in five identified distinct population segments[†] within the lower 48 states. In June 1998, we, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, determined threatened status under the Endangered Species Act (16 United States Code [USC] 1531 *et seq.*) for bull trout in two distinct population segments in the Klamath River (Oregon) and Columbia River (Idaho, Montana, Oregon, and Washington) (63 FR 31647). In April 1999, the Jarbidge River Distinct Population Segment of bull trout (Idaho and Nevada) was also determined to be threatened (64 FR 17110). Two more distinct population segments of bull trout, the Coastal-Puget Sound (Washington) and St. Mary-Belly River (Montana), were also found to be threatened in November, 1999 (64 FR 58910). This final listing resulted in all bull trout in the coterminous United States being listed as threatened. However, as provided in the final listing rule, we are continuing to refer to the original distinct population segments for the purposes of recovery planning and consultation (64 FR 58910). This recovery plan addresses the conservation actions deemed necessary for the recovery of the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit[†] (Figure 1; also see “Recovery Plan Terminology and Structure” below).

The recovery priority number for bull trout in the coterminous United States is 9C, on a scale of 1C (highest) to 18 (lowest), indicating: 1) taxonomically, we are treating these populations as distinct population segments of the species; 2) the bull trout is subject to a moderate degree of threat; and 3) the potential for recovery is considered high. The “C” indicates the potential for conflict with human activities during recovery (USFWS 1983a,b).



Figure 1. The Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment (DPS) of bull trout, showing the division of the population segment into two management units. The inset map shows the location of the DPS within the state of Washington.

In the interest of streamlining, details regarding the ecology of bull trout in the Coastal-Puget Sound and the threats faced by the bull trout populations there are provided in the listing document for this distinct population segment and are not repeated here (64 FR 58910). However, a brief overview of bull trout life history, habitat needs, and reasons for decline is provided below.

General Description and Life History

Bull trout have been defined as a distinct species (Cavender 1978), however, the genetic relationship among various groups of bull trout within the species can be complex (Rieman and Allendorf 2001). Biologists had previously identified bull trout as Dolly Varden (*Salvelinus malma*), largely because of the external similarity of appearance and the previous unavailability of adequate specimens of both species to any one taxonomist. Morphological (form and structure) analyses have confirmed the distinctiveness of the two species in their different, but overlapping, geographic distributions (Haas and McPhail 1991). Several genetic studies have subsequently confirmed the species distinction of bull trout and Dolly Varden (Phillips *et al.* 1989; Crane *et al.* 1994). Both species occur together in western Washington, for example, with little or no interbreeding (Leary and Allendorf 1997). Lastly, bull trout and Dolly Varden each appear to be more closely related genetically to other species of *Salvelinus* than they are to each other (Phillips *et al.* 1989; Greene *et al.* 1990; Pleyte *et al.* 1992). For example, bull trout are most closely related to Japanese char (*S. leucomaenis*) whereas Dolly Varden are most closely related to Arctic char (*S. alpinus*).

Bull trout exhibit both resident[†] and migratory[†] life history strategies. Both resident and migratory forms may be found together, and either form may produce offspring exhibiting either resident or migratory behavior (Rieman and McIntyre 1993). Resident bull trout complete their entire life cycle in the tributary (or nearby) streams in which they spawn and rear. The resident form tends to be smaller than the migratory form at maturity and also produces fewer eggs (Fraley and Shepard 1989; Goetz 1989). Migratory bull trout spawn in tributary streams where juvenile fish rear 1 to 4 years before migrating to either a lake (adfluvial[†] form), river (fluvial[†] form) (Fraley and Shepard 1989; Goetz 1989), or saltwater (anadromous[†]) to rear as subadults or to live as adults (Cavender 1978; McPhail and Baxter 1996; WDFW *et al.* 1997). Bull trout

normally reach sexual maturity in 4 to 7 years and may live longer than 12 years. They are iteroparous (they spawn more than once in a lifetime), and both repeat- and alternate-year spawning has been reported, although repeat-spawning frequency and post-spawning mortality are not well documented (Leathe and Graham 1982; Fraley and Shepard 1989; Pratt 1992; Rieman and McIntyre 1996).

The iteroparous reproductive system of bull trout has important repercussions for the management of this species. Bull trout require two-way passage up and downstream, not only for repeat spawning but also for foraging. Most fish ladders[†], however, were designed specifically for anadromous semelparous (fishes that spawn once and then die, and therefore require only one-way passage upstream) salmonids[†]. Therefore even dams or other barriers with fish passage facilities may be a factor in isolating bull trout populations if they do not provide a downstream passage route.

Growth varies depending upon life-history strategy. Resident adults range from 150 to 300 millimeters (6 to 12 inches) total length, and migratory adults commonly reach 600 millimeters (24 inches) or more (Pratt 1985; Goetz 1989). The largest verified bull trout is a 14.6-kilogram (32-pound) specimen caught in Lake Pend Oreille, Idaho, in 1949 (Simpson and Wallace 1982).

Habitat Characteristics

Bull trout have more specific habitat requirements than most other salmonids (Rieman and McIntyre 1993). Habitat components that influence bull trout distribution and abundance include water temperature, cover, channel form and stability, valley form, spawning and rearing[†] substrate, and migratory corridors[†] (Fraley and Shepard 1989; Goetz 1989; Hoelscher and Bjornn 1989; Sedell and Everest 1991; Howell and Buchanan 1992; Pratt 1992; Rieman and McIntyre 1993, 1995; Rich 1996; Watson and Hillman 1997). Watson and Hillman (1997) concluded that watersheds[†] must have specific physical characteristics to provide the habitat requirements necessary for bull trout to successfully spawn and rear and that these specific characteristics are not necessarily present throughout these watersheds. Because bull trout exhibit a patchy distribution, even in pristine habitats (Rieman and McIntyre 1993), fish

should not be expected to simultaneously occupy all available habitats (Rieman *et al.* 1997).

Migratory corridors link seasonal habitats for all bull trout life histories. The ability to migrate is important to the persistence of bull trout (Rieman and McIntyre 1993; Gilpin, *in litt.* 1997; Rieman *et al.* 1997). Migrations facilitate gene flow among local populations[†] when individuals from different local populations interbreed, or stray, to nonnatal streams. Local populations that are extirpated[†] by catastrophic events may also become reestablished by bull trout migrants. However, it is important to note that the genetic structuring of bull trout indicates that there is limited gene flow among bull trout populations, which may encourage local adaptation within individual populations, and that reestablishment of extirpated populations may take a very long time (Spruell *et al.* 1999; Rieman and McIntyre 1993).

Cold water temperatures play an important role in determining bull trout habitat, as these fish are primarily found in colder streams (below 15 degrees Celsius; 59 degrees Fahrenheit), and spawning habitats are generally characterized by temperatures that drop below 9 degrees Celsius (48 degrees Fahrenheit) in the fall (Fraley and Shepard 1989; Pratt 1992; Rieman and McIntyre 1993).

Thermal requirements for bull trout appear to differ at different life stages. Spawning areas are often associated with cold-water springs, groundwater infiltration, and the coldest streams in a given watershed[†] (Pratt 1992; Rieman and McIntyre 1993; Rieman *et al.* 1997; Baxter *et al.* 1997). Optimum incubation temperatures for bull trout eggs range from 2 to 4 degrees Celsius (35 to 39 degrees Fahrenheit) whereas optimum water temperatures for rearing range from about 8 to 10 degrees Celsius (46 to 50 degrees Fahrenheit) (McPhail and Murray 1979; Goetz 1989; Buchanan and Gregory 1997). In Granite Creek, Idaho, Bonneau and Scarnecchia (1996) observed that juvenile bull trout selected the coldest water available in a plunge pool, 8 to 9 degrees Celsius (46 to 48 degrees Fahrenheit), within a temperature gradient of 8 to 15 degrees Celsius (46 to 60 degrees Fahrenheit). In a landscape study relating bull trout distribution to maximum water temperatures, Dunham *et al.* (2003) found that the probability of juvenile bull trout occurrence does not become high (*i.e.*, greater than 0.75) until

maximum temperatures decline to 11 to 12 degrees Celsius (52 to 54 degrees Fahrenheit).

Although bull trout are found primarily in cold streams, occasionally these fish are found in larger, warmer river systems throughout the Columbia River basin (Fraley and Shepard 1989; Rieman and McIntyre 1993, 1995; Buchanan and Gregory 1997; Rieman *et al.* 1997). Factors that can influence bull trout ability to survive in warmer rivers include availability and proximity of cold water patches and food productivity (Myrick *et al.* 2002). In Nevada, adult bull trout have been collected at 17.2 degrees Celsius (63 degrees Fahrenheit) in the West Fork of the Jarbidge River (S. Werdon, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, pers. comm. 1998) and have been observed in Dave Creek where maximum daily water temperatures were 17.1 to 17.5 degrees Celsius (62.8 to 63.6 degrees Fahrenheit) (Werdon 2000). In the Little Lost River, Idaho, bull trout have been collected in water having temperatures up to 20 degrees Celsius (68 degrees Fahrenheit); however, bull trout made up less than 50 percent of all salmonids when maximum summer water temperature exceeded 15 degrees Celsius (59 degrees Fahrenheit) and less than 10 percent of all salmonids when temperature exceeded 17 degrees Celsius (63 degrees Fahrenheit) (Gamett 1999). In the Little Lost River study most sites that had high densities of bull trout were in an area where primary productivity increased in the streams following a fire (B. Gamett, U. S. Forest Service, pers. comm. 2002).

All life history stages of bull trout are associated with complex forms of cover, including large woody debris[†], undercut banks, boulders, and pools (Fraley and Shepard 1989; Goetz 1989; Hoelscher and Bjornn 1989; Sedell and Everest 1991; Pratt 1992; Thomas 1992; Rich 1996; Sexauer and James 1997; Watson and Hillman 1997). Maintaining bull trout habitat requires stability of stream channels and maintenance of natural flow patterns (Rieman and McIntyre 1993). Juvenile and adult bull trout frequently inhabit side channels, stream margins, and pools with suitable cover (Sexauer and James 1997). These areas are sensitive to activities that directly or indirectly affect stream channel stability[†] and alter natural flow patterns. For example, altered stream flow in the fall may disrupt bull trout during the spawning period, and channel instability may decrease survival of eggs and young juveniles in the gravel from winter through spring

(Fraley and Shepard 1989; Pratt 1992; Pratt and Huston 1993). Pratt (1992) indicated that increases in fine sediment[†] reduce egg survival and emergence.

Bull trout typically spawn from August to November during periods of decreasing water temperatures. Preferred spawning habitat consists of low-gradient stream reaches with loose, clean gravel (Fraley and Shepard 1989). Redds[†] are often constructed in stream reaches fed by springs or near other sources of cold groundwater (Goetz 1989; Pratt 1992; Rieman and McIntyre 1996). Depending on water temperature, incubation is normally 100 to 145 days (Pratt 1992), and after hatching, juveniles remain in the substrate. Time from egg deposition to emergence of fry[†] may surpass 200 days. Fry normally emerge from early April through May, depending on water temperatures and increasing stream flows (Pratt 1992; Ratliff and Howell 1992).

Migratory forms of bull trout appear to develop when habitat conditions allow movement between spawning and rearing streams[†] and larger rivers or lakes where foraging opportunities may be enhanced (Frissell 1993). For example, multiple life history forms (*e.g.*, resident and fluvial) and multiple migration patterns have been noted in the Grande Ronde River (Baxter 2002). Parts of this river system have retained habitat conditions that allow free movement between spawning and rearing areas and the mainstem Snake River. Such multiple life history strategies help to maintain the stability and persistence of bull trout populations to environmental changes. Benefits to migratory bull trout include greater growth in the more productive waters of larger streams and lakes, greater fecundity resulting in increased reproductive potential, and dispersing the population across space and time so that spawning streams may be recolonized should local populations suffer a catastrophic loss (Rieman and McIntyre 1993; MBTSG 1998; Frissell 1999). In the absence of the migratory bull trout life form, isolated populations cannot be replenished when disturbance makes local habitats temporarily unsuitable, the range of the species is diminished, and the potential for enhanced reproductive capabilities are lost (Rieman and McIntyre 1993).

Diet

Bull trout are opportunistic feeders, with food habits primarily a function of size and life-history strategy. Resident and juvenile migratory bull trout prey

on terrestrial and aquatic insects, macrozooplankton, and small fish (Boag 1987; Goetz 1989; Donald and Alger 1993). Adult migratory bull trout feed on various fish species (Leathe and Graham 1982; Fraley and Shepard 1989; Brown 1994; Donald and Alger 1993). In coastal areas of western Washington, bull trout feed on Pacific herring (*Clupea pallasii*), Pacific sand lance (*Ammodytes hexapterus*), and surf smelt (*Hypomesus pretiosus*) in the ocean (WDFW *et al.* 1997).

Bull trout migrations and life history strategies are closely related to their feeding and foraging strategies. Optimal foraging theory can be used to describe strategies fish use to choose between alternative sources of food by weighing the benefits and costs of capturing one choice of food over another. For example, prey often occur in concentrated patches of abundance (“patch model”; Gerking 1998). As the predator feeds the prey population is reduced, and it becomes more profitable for the predator to seek a new patch rather than continue feeding on the original one. This can be explained in terms of balancing energy acquired versus energy expended. In the Skagit River system, anadromous bull trout make migrations as long as 195 kilometers (121 miles) between marine foraging areas in Puget Sound and headwater[†] spawning grounds, foraging on salmon eggs and juvenile salmon along their migratory route (WDFW *et al.* 1997). Anadromous bull trout also use marine waters as migratory corridors to reach seasonal habitats in non-natal watersheds to forage and overwinter (Brenkman, *in litt.*, 2003; Brenkman and Corbett, *in litt.*, 2003; Goetz, *in litt.*, 2003a,b).

A single optimal foraging strategy is not necessarily a consistent feature in the life of a fish, but this foraging strategy can change from one life stage to another. Fish growth depends on the quantity and quality of food that is eaten (Gerking 1994) and as fish grow their foraging strategy changes as their food changes in quantity, size, or other characteristics. Resident and juvenile migratory bull trout prey on terrestrial and aquatic insects, macrozooplankton, mysids[†] and small fish (Shepard *et al.* 1984; Boag 1987; Goetz 1989; Donald and Alger 1993). Bull trout 110 millimeters (4.3 inches) long or longer commonly have fish in their diet (Shepard *et al.* 1984), and bull trout of all sizes have been found to eat fish half their length (Beauchamp and Van Tassell 2001). Migratory bull trout begin growing rapidly once they move to waters with abundant forage that includes fish (Shepard *et al.* 1984; Carl 1985). As these fish mature they become larger bodied predators and are able to travel greater distances (with

greater energy expended) in search of prey species of larger size and in greater abundance (with greater energy acquired). In Lake Billy Chinook as bull trout became increasingly piscivorous[†] with increasing size, the prey species changed from mainly smaller bull trout and rainbow trout for bull trout less than 450 millimeters (17.7 inches) in length to mainly kokanee for bull trout greater in size (Beauchamp and Van Tassell 2001).

Migration allows bull trout to access optimal foraging areas and exploit a wider variety of prey resources. Bull trout likely move to or with a food source. For example, some bull trout in the Wenatchee basin were found to consume large numbers of earthworms during spring runoff in May at the mouth of the Little Wenatchee River where it enters Lake Wenatchee (USFWS, in prep.). In the Wenatchee River radio-tagged bull trout moved downstream after spawning to the locations of spawning Chinook (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) and sockeye (*O. nerka*) salmon and held for a few days to a few weeks, possibly to prey on dislodged eggs, before establishing an overwintering area downstream or in Lake Wenatchee (USFWS, in prep.).

Reasons for Decline

Throughout their range in the lower 48 states bull trout have been negatively impacted by the combined effects of a variety of factors, including habitat degradation and fragmentation, blockage of migratory corridors, poor water quality, fisheries management practices, entrainment[†], and the introduction of nonnative species[†]. Habitat alteration, primarily through the construction of impoundments, dams, and water diversions, has fragmented habitats, eliminated migratory corridors, and isolated bull trout in the headwaters of tributaries (Rieman et al. 1997; Dunham and Rieman 1999; Spruell *et al.* 1999; Rieman and Dunham 2000). The combination of such factors has resulted in rangewide declines in bull trout distribution, abundance, and habitat quality, as well as the reduction or elimination of migratory bull trout. Threats specific to bull trout within the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment are identified in the listing rule (64 FR 58910).

Populations of migratory bull trout require abundant fish forage and it is likely that many bull trout populations have been affected by declines in salmon

populations. Bull trout are a piscivorous fish whose existence and historical abundance throughout much of their range was historically connected with, and most likely dependent on, healthy salmon populations (Armstrong and Morrow 1980; Brown 1994; Nelson and Caverhill 1999; Baxter and Torgerson, *in litt.*, 2003). In parts of their range, especially in the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment, salmon continue to provide an important food source (Kraemer, *in litt.*, 2003). Food resources provided by salmon include dislodged eggs, emergent and migrating fry, and smolts[†] (juvenile fish headed to the ocean and undergoing physiological changes to adapt to saltwater). In addition, bull trout benefit from the increased productivity supplied by the decomposing carcasses of adult salmon.

Recent publications have documented the recent declines and low abundance of Pacific salmon populations throughout much of their range within the coterminous United States (WDF *et al.* 1993; NMFS 1991; NOAA, *in litt.*, 2003). In 1991, the American Fisheries Society published a status list of 214 naturally spawning stocks[†] of salmon, steelhead, and cutthroat trout from California, Oregon, Idaho and Washington. Their assessment included 101 stocks at high risk of extinction, 58 stocks at moderate risk of extinction, 54 stocks of special concern, and one classified as threatened under the Endangered Species Act (Nehlsen *et al.* 1991).

Detailed information on specific threats to bull trout in the Puget Sound Management Unit (see “Recovery Plan Terminology and Structure,” below) is provided in Part II of this plan.

SIGNIFICANCE OF THE COASTAL-PUGET SOUND DISTINCT POPULATION SEGMENT

The full array of bull trout resident and migratory life history forms[†] are found in the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment. Bull trout occurring here may be residents, or they may exhibit one of several migratory behaviors. Adfluvial bull trout migrate from tributary streams to a lake or reservoir to mature, and return to a tributary to spawn, and fluvial bull trout migrate from tributary streams to larger rivers to mature and then return to tributaries to spawn. Of particular significance, the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct

Population Segment supports the only known anadromous forms of bull trout within the coterminous United States. These fish hatch in freshwater, migrate to and from the ocean to grow and live as adults, and then return to freshwater to spawn.

The restoration and preservation of the migratory life history forms of bull trout will be an important factor in providing for the recovery of the species. Migratory barriers that have resulted in the loss of the migratory forms have been shown to negatively impact bull trout by increasing the probability of losing individual local populations (Rieman and McIntyre 1993), increasing the probability of hybridization[†] with introduced brook trout (Rieman and McIntyre 1993), reducing the potential for movements in response to developmental, foraging, and seasonal habitat requirements (MBTSG 1998), reducing reproductive capability by eliminating the larger, more fecund migratory form (MBTSG 1998; Rieman and McIntyre 1993), and reducing the geographic range of the species. Restoring and maintaining migratory corridors will ensure the persistence of migratory bull trout and allow individuals access to unoccupied but suitable habitats, foraging areas, and refuges from disturbances (Saunders *et al.* 1991). Furthermore, maintenance of migratory corridors for bull trout is essential to provide connectivity[†] among local populations, and enables the reestablishment of extirpated[†] populations. Where migratory bull trout are not present, isolated populations cannot be replenished when a disturbance makes local habitats temporarily unsuitable (Rieman and McIntyre 1993; USDA and USDI 1997).

Of the five distinct population segments of bull trout, only the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment provides the opportunity to conserve all known life history forms of the species. In the final listing rule, we determined that the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of bull trout occurs in a unique ecological setting because it supports the only known anadromous forms of bull trout in the coterminous United States. In addition, it was determined that the loss of this population segment would significantly reduce the overall range of the taxon (64 FR 58910). Since the original listing, mitochondrial DNA data has revealed genetic differences between coastal populations of bull trout, including the lower Columbia and Fraser rivers, and inland populations in the upper Columbia and Fraser river drainages east of the Cascade and Coast Mountains (Williams *et al.* 1997; Taylor *et al.* 1999). This

divergence is likely based on recolonization patterns associated with glacial refugia 10,000 to 15,000 years ago (Haas and McPhail 2001; Costello *et al.* 2003; Spruell *et al.* 2003), and suggests the existence of two or more genetically differentiated lineages of bull trout, each with a unique evolutionary legacy. Although this recent genetic evidence suggests some degree of shared evolutionary potential between all coastal populations of bull trout, these major assemblages are further subdivided at the level of major river basins (Spruell *et al.* 2003) and this, in conjunction with the unique occurrence of anadromy within the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment, suggests that it is appropriate to continue to focus our recovery efforts on this distinct population segment as we evaluate the potential implications of recent genetic analyses on the organization of bull trout recovery efforts.

RECOVERY PLAN TERMINOLOGY AND STRUCTURE

The bull trout is a wide-ranging species with multiple life history forms and a complex population structure reflecting a high degree of local site fidelity (Kanda and Allendorf 2001) and substantial genetic divergence between breeding populations (Dunham and Rieman 1999; Spruell *et al.* 2003). Furthermore, it has been suggested that maintaining variability in life history strategies and dispersal over many habitats may be as important to bull trout conservation as maintaining genetic variability (Rieman and Allendorf 2001). In order to preserve the diverse array of life histories and genetic variability exhibited by bull trout across their range, this recovery plan utilizes the concept of “core areas[†].” A **core area** represents a combination of suitable habitat and one or more **local populations** (the smallest group of fish that are known to represent an interacting reproductive unit) that function as one demographic unit due to occasional gene flow between them; essentially, most core areas function as metapopulations[†] (Meffe and Carroll 1994; Hanski and Gilpin 1997; Dunham and Rieman 1999). A **metapopulation** can be defined as a collection of relatively isolated, spatially distributed local populations bound together by occasional dispersal between them. Local populations may be extirpated, but can be reestablished by individuals from other local populations, although, as stated earlier, genetic analysis indicates this will likely take a very long time. In general, the characteristics of most bull trout populations appear to be consistent with the

metapopulation concept, although the exact structure of bull trout metapopulations is not well understood (Rieman and McIntyre 1993).

For the purposes of recovery, we defined core areas – which represent both suitable habitat as well as a demographically dependent grouping of local populations – as the most biologically meaningful population units to work with to ensure the long-term viability of bull trout. The key to bull trout recovery lies in providing an interconnected continuum of complex habitats which support diverse life histories and life cycles to maintain gene flow and genetic variation and facilitate metapopulation dynamics within core areas. To achieve this goal, we developed a hierarchical approach to bull trout recovery, and further subdivided the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment into two individual **management units**, the Puget Sound Management Unit and the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Focusing recovery on these smaller areas is advantageous because bull trout are broadly distributed, use a variety of habitats, and the factors affecting them vary widely at the scale of the distinct population segment. A narrower scope allows recovery actions to be tailored to specific areas and encourages the implementation of actions by local interests. The delineation of these management units was based on presumed shared genetic characteristics (*i.e.*, groupings of bull trout within isolated basins, major river basins, or collections of basins with potential for current or historical gene flow) as well as jurisdictional and logistical concerns (*e.g.*, the international boundary with Canada represents the northern boundary of the management units). The intent of the management units is to foster effective management and promote local management decisions regarding bull trout as well as to preserve the evolutionary legacy shared between the multiple bull trout core areas that comprise each of the units.

The recovery of the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of bull trout will depend upon the achievement of recovery goals and criteria for the entire distinct population segment. Maintenance of fully functioning core areas across the range of bull trout within the population segment will require that each of the two management units that comprise this distinct population segment contribute to the success of this effort. In keeping with the goal of fostering effective management and recovery of bull trout at the local level, we have developed separate recovery plans for each of these management units, and

established specific “**recovery targets**” for each management unit that will be used to guide bull trout recovery within the distinct population segment as a whole.

Presently bull trout are listed across their range within the coterminous United States (64 FR 58910). Prior to the coterminous listing in 1999, five distinct population segments of bull trout were identified. Although the bull trout distinct population segments are disjunct and geographically isolated from one another, they include the entire distribution of bull trout in the coterminous United States. In accordance with our Distinct Population Segment policy (61 FR 4722), a coterminous listing was found to be appropriate when all five distinct population segments were determined to warrant listing. As provided in the final listing rule, however, we continue to refer to these populations as distinct population segments for recovery planning purposes (64 FR 58910).

A delisting determination can only be made on a “listable entity” under the Endangered Species Act; listable entities include species, subspecies, or distinct population segments of vertebrate animals, as defined by the Endangered Species Act and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service policy (61 FR 4722). Because bull trout were listed at the coterminous level in 1999, currently delisting can only occur at the coterminous level (64 FR 58910). In the future, if warranted by additional information, and if the Coastal-Puget Sound population segment is reconfirmed as meeting the definition of a distinct population segment under a regulatory rulemaking process, delisting may be considered separately for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of bull trout once it has achieved a recovered state.

In this Strategy for Recovery section, we define the recovery criteria for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of bull trout as currently delineated. The site-specific strategies, recovery actions, and recovery targets for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit are presented in Part II of this plan. The Puget Sound Management Unit is addressed in Volume I of the Draft Recovery Plan for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of Bull Trout.

RECOVERY GOALS AND OBJECTIVES

Recovery Goal

The goal of this recovery plan is to **ensure the long-term persistence of self-sustaining, complex, interacting groups[†] of bull trout distributed across the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment so that the species can be delisted.** To accomplish this goal, recovery objectives addressing distribution, abundance, habitat and genetics were identified.

Recovery Objectives

The recovery objectives for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment are as follows:

- Maintain the current distribution of bull trout anadromy and restore migratory life history forms in some of the previously occupied areas.
- Maintain stable or increasing trends in abundance of bull trout.
- Restore and maintain suitable habitat conditions for all bull trout life history stages and strategies with an emphasis on anadromy.
- Conserve genetic diversity and provide opportunity for genetic exchange to conserve migratory life history forms.

Recovery Criteria

Achieving recovery criteria and making formal delisting decisions are two separate processes. Delisting requires that a five factor analysis¹ in a regulatory

¹The five factors considered in delisting decisions are the same as those considered in the initial listing process for a species: a) the present or threatened destruction, modification, or curtailments of its habitat or range; b) overutilization for commercial, recreational, scientific, or educational purposes; c) disease or predation; d) the inadequacy of existing regulatory mechanisms; and e) other natural or manmade factors affecting its continued existence.

rulemaking process demonstrates that the threats to the species have been reduced or eliminated to the point that the species no longer requires the protections of the Endangered Species Act. The recovery criteria established in a recovery plan for a threatened species, such as the bull trout, are intended to serve as clear, measurable guidelines for assessing the conditions under which such a five factor analysis would likely result in a determination that the species warrants delisting (*i.e.*, that it no longer meets the definition of “threatened,” which is “any species that is likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range”). A delisting decision therefore considers both the attainment of the recovery criteria as defined in a recovery plan and the outcome of a formal five factor analysis in a regulatory rulemaking.

The Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment will be considered recovered when all core areas are fully functional, as measured by parameters addressing the distribution, abundance, productivity (stable or increasing adult population trend), and connectivity (including the potential for expression of all life history traits) of bull trout. The conditions for recovery are identified in the criteria below. The recovery actions identified in this plan are designed to sufficiently control or eliminate the threats to bull trout such that the recovery criteria may be attained for the Coastal Puget Distinct Population Segment of bull trout.

Recovery criteria for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment:

- 1. The biological and ecological function of the 14 identified core areas (8 in the Puget Sound Management Unit and 6 in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit) for bull trout within the distinct population segment has been restored. The components of fully functioning core areas include:**
 - a) Habitat sufficiently maintained or restored to provide for the persistence of broadly distributed local populations supporting the migratory life form within each core area.** The term “broadly distributed” implies that local populations are able to access and are actively using habitat that fully provides for spawning, rearing,

foraging, migrating, and overwintering needs at recovered abundance levels. An actual quantitative estimate of the amount of habitat that will be required to meet this criterion is unknown at this time; the adequacy of habitat restoration and management efforts must be measured indirectly by criteria 1b through 1d. The currently identified local populations that will be used as a measure of broad distribution across the distinct population segment are detailed in the recovery targets set for each of the two management units.

b) Adult bull trout are sufficiently abundant to provide for the persistence and viability of core areas; this level of abundance is estimated to be 16,500 adult bull trout across all core areas.

Resident life history forms are not included in this estimate, but are considered a research need. As more data is collected, recovered population estimates will be revised to more accurately reflect both the migratory and resident life history components. The recovery team[†] has initially set abundance targets conservatively if there was limited available information for constituent core areas; these will likely be revised as new information becomes available. The recovered abundance levels for the currently identified core areas in the distinct population segment are detailed in the recovery targets set for each of the two management units.

c) Measures of bull trout abundance within all core areas show stable or increasing trends based on 10 to 15 years (representing at least 2 bull trout generations) of monitoring data. Details are provided in the recovery targets for each of the two management units.

d) Habitat within, and where appropriate, between core areas, is connected so as to provide for the potential of the full expression of migratory behavior (particularly anadromy), allow for the refounding[†] of extirpated populations, and provide for the potential of genetic exchange between populations. Meeting this criterion requires that passage has been restored or improved, and in some cases further evaluated, at specific barriers identified as inhibiting recovery (including barriers due to physical obstructions,

unsuitable habitat, and poor water quality). Known barriers to passage within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit include Cushman Dams 1 and 2, Elwha Dam and Glines Canyon Dam, the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife Dungeness Fish Hatchery, and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Quinalt National Fish Hatchery. Known barriers to passage within the Puget Sound Management Unit include the Bellingham Diversion, Gorge Dam, Ross Dam, Tacoma Headworks diversion dam, and Howard Hansen Dam; the Baker River Dams and Electron and Buckley diversions are also in need of passage improvement. Details regarding these specific barriers are provided in the recovery targets set for each of the two management units.

Meeting this criterion also requires that conditions in both freshwater and nearshore marine foraging, migration, and overwintering habitats[†] are maintained and/or restored to the level that fully support an adequate prey base, especially for the anadromous forms, as well as the other identified components (distribution, abundance, and trend) for fully functional core areas within the Coastal-Puget Sound population segment.

- 2. A monitoring plan has been developed and is ready for implementation, to cover a minimum of 5 years post-delisting, to ensure the ongoing recovery of the species and the continuing effectiveness of management actions.**

PART II. OLYMPIC PENINSULA MANAGEMENT UNIT

INTRODUCTION

Management Unit Designation

As described in Part I of this plan, two management units, the Olympic Peninsula and the Puget Sound, have been designated in the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of bull trout based on presumed biological and genetic factors common to bull trout within specific geographic areas (Figure 1).

Although genetic data informing population structure in this area is incomplete, we believe that Olympic Peninsula bull trout populations differ from populations in watersheds that originate on the western slopes of the Cascade Mountains and flow into Puget Sound. Although these two management units are connected by marine waters, there is currently no evidence indicating that bull trout migrate from Puget Sound to the Strait of Juan de Fuca or Hood Canal in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Recent studies suggest that migrations through marine waters are more localized in nature (Kraemer 1994; F. Goetz, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, pers. comm. 2002a).

The Olympic Peninsula and Puget Sound Management Units for bull trout differ slightly from Washington State's salmon recovery regions described in the 1999 draft statewide strategy to recover salmon, "Extinction Is Not An Option" (WGSRO 1999). The salmon recovery strategy includes Hood Canal watersheds and some Strait of Juan de Fuca watersheds in the Puget Sound Region.

The Olympic Peninsula Management Unit includes selected rivers and tributaries to Hood Canal, Strait of Juan de Fuca, Pacific Ocean coastal area north of Willapa Bay, Grays Harbor, and Chehalis River. Although data and records regarding the historical distribution of bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit are limited, observations indicate that mainstem reaches and many tributaries within the Quinault, Queets, Hoh, Elwha, Dungeness, and Skokomish Rivers are occupied or used by bull trout at various life stages (see "Distribution and Abundance"). Other information indicates that bull trout from several of these rivers migrate into saltwater to forage and travel along the coast and into coastal tributaries, bays, or estuaries to reach additional foraging and overwintering sites.

The Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team[†] has identified the Quinault, Queets, Hoh, Elwha, Dungeness, and Skokomish River basins, which contain the only known bull trout core populations[†] in the management unit, as six separate core areas (Figure 2). The combination of core habitat[†] (*i.e.*, habitat that could supply all the necessary elements for the long-term security of bull trout including both spawning and rearing, foraging, migrating, and overwintering habitat) and a core population comprises a core area. A core area is the basis for measuring recovery in a management unit. A local population is defined as a group of bull

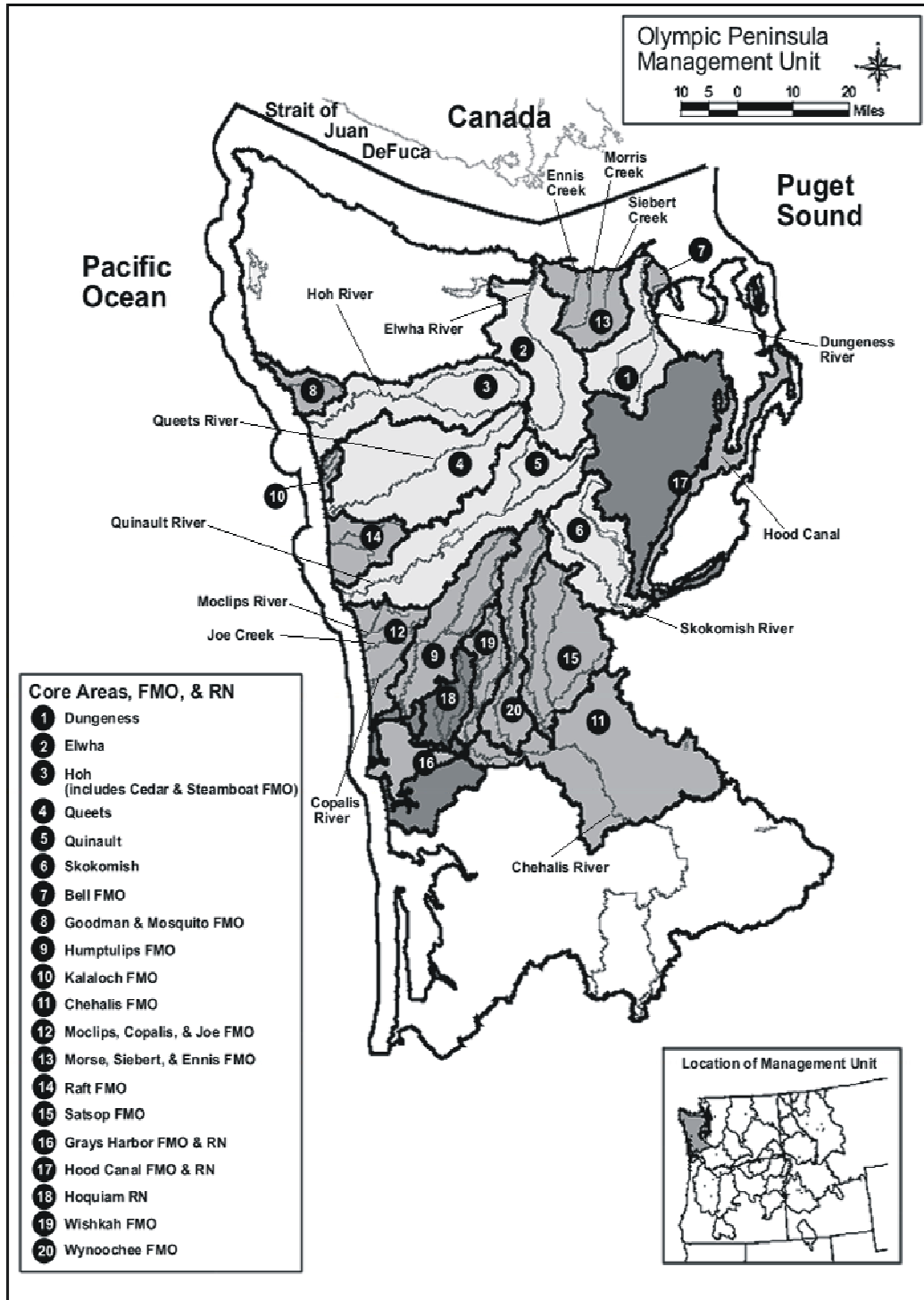


Figure 2. Olympic Peninsula Management Unit showing the six identified core areas; important foraging, migration, and overwintering habitats (FMO); and research needs areas (RN) for bull trout.

trout that spawn within a particular stream or portion of a stream system. A local population is considered to be the smallest group of bull trout that is known to represent an interacting reproductive unit, and may include more than one stream if the recovery team determines that this grouping constitutes an interacting reproductive unit. A core area may include many local populations.

Bull trout populations within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit exhibit all known migratory life history forms of this species, including fluvial (fish that migrate from tributaries to larger rivers to mature), adfluvial (fish that migrate from tributaries to lakes or reservoirs to mature), and anadromous (fish born in fresh water that migrate to the ocean to grow and live as an adult, returning to fresh water to spawn) populations. Additional bull trout surveys may document resident life forms (nonmigratory fish, living in tributaries for their entire lives) as well, which are not yet documented on the Olympic Peninsula.

Ten local populations have been identified in the six core areas in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit (Table 1). Where specific spawning location information was lacking, the Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team used best professional judgement and local expertise to identify some local populations that include bull trout in a complex of tributaries, or where multiple age classes[†] have been observed, and where suitable spawning habitat occurs. Within a local population all or most of the accessible tributaries are considered occupied by bull trout. These accessible tributaries often have only short reaches of accessible habitat. Although spawning information is limited for the Olympic Peninsula, spawning has been documented in this type of short accessible reach (Brenkman and Meyer 1999; Ogg and Stutsman 2002).

Geographic Description of Management Unit

Geography and Landownership. The Olympic Peninsula is a relatively isolated province bordered on three sides by water: the Pacific Ocean (west), Strait of Juan de Fuca (north), and Hood Canal (east). The Chehalis River defines much of the southern boundary. The Olympic Mountains comprise the central portion of the Olympic Peninsula, and high elevation ridges radiate from the interior mountains to form the boundaries of the major river basins. Elevations

Table 1: Olympic Peninsula core areas; currently identified local populations; foraging, migration and overwintering habitat; and research needs areas for bull trout. See also Figure 2.

Core Area	Local Population <i>(potential local populations^a in italic type)</i>	Foraging, Migration, Overwintering Habitat^b	Research Needs Area
Skokomish River, including North and South Forks	North Fork Skokomish River, including Elk and Slate Creeks		
	South Fork Skokomish River, including Church Creek		
	<i>Brown Creek (potential)</i>		
	N/A ^c	Hood Canal and westside tributary estuaries	Hood Canal westside tributaries
		Bell Creek (east of the Dungeness River)	
Dungeness River, including Grey Wolf and upper Dungeness	Middle Dungeness River and tributaries up to rm 24 and including Silver, Gold, and Canyon Creeks		
	Gray Wolf River to confluence with Cameron, Grand, and Cedar Creeks		
	N/A ^c	Morse Creek, Ennis Creek, and Siebert Creek (tributaries to Strait of Juan de Fuca between Dungeness and Elwha Rivers)	
Elwha River	Elwha River and tributaries above 213 meters (700 feet) elevation, including Boulder, Cat, Prescott, Stony, Hayes, Godkin, Buckinghorse, and Delabarre Creeks		
	<i>Little River (potential)</i>		
	N/A ^c	Nearshore Olympic Peninsula marine waters of the Pacific Ocean and tributaries including Goodman, Mosquito, Cedar, Steamboat, Kalaloch, and Joe Creeks; Raft, Moclips, and Copalis Rivers	Quillayute River

Table 1 (cont.). Olympic Peninsula core areas; currently identified local populations; foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat; and research needs areas for bull trout. See also Figure 2.

Core Area	Local Population <i>(potential local populations^a in italic type)</i>	Foraging, Migration, Overwintering Habitat^b	Research Needs Area
Hoh River	Upper Hoh River (above confluence with South Fork Hoh) and tributaries, including Cougar and “OGS” Creeks		
	South Fork Hoh River and tributaries		
Queets River	Queets River and tributaries above the confluence with Tshletshy Creek		
Quinault River	North Fork Quinault River and tributaries, including Rustler Creek		
	Quinault River (East Fork) and tributaries above confluence with North Fork Quinault River		
	N/A ^c	Grays Harbor, including Humptulips and Wishkah Rivers	Hoquiam River
	N/A ^c	Lower Chehalis River Basin, including Wynoochee and Satsop Rivers	

^a A potential local population is a local population that does not currently exist but that could exist and contribute to recovery, if spawning and rearing habitat or connectivity is restored in a known or suspected unoccupied area.

^b Foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat is found both within and outside of core areas; such habitat identified in this table is habitat located outside of core areas, and is within watersheds not believed to support spawning.

^c Distribution and abundance of most local populations of bull trout on the Olympic Peninsula are poorly known at this time. Where no spawning information was available, the presence of multiple age classes (small juveniles, less than 150 millimeters [6 inches], and adults) was used.

on the Olympic Peninsula range from sea level to 2,462 meters (7,962 feet) at Mount Olympus.

The Olympic Peninsula contains a total area of 13,768 square kilometers (5,316 square miles). Olympic National Park includes nearly one fourth (362,632 hectares [896,083 acres]) of the peninsula. Six Indian reservations occupy 92,862 hectares (29,467 acres); the U.S. Department of Agriculture Forest Service (U.S. Forest Service) controls 253,053 hectares (625,308 acres); and the Washington Department of Natural Resources has jurisdiction over 161,874 hectares (400,000 acres) (S. Brenkman, Olympic National Park, pers. comm. 2004).

Watershed boundaries of the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit overlap ceded lands of the Chehalis, Quinault, Hoh, Quileute, Skokomish, Lower Elwha S'Klallam, and Jamestown S'Klallam Tribes. These Tribes and other Native American Tribes have treaty fishing rights on the Olympic Peninsula.

Geological History. Geologists hypothesize that the Olympic Peninsula formed when the Juan de Fuca Plate, an ocean plate carrying a load of sandstone, shale, and lava flow, moved under the neighboring North American Plate (Storm *et al.* 1990; Kirk 1992). The upper portions of sedimentary deposit of the ocean plate crumbled and folded as it moved under the North American Plate. Deposits that were scraped off became part of the North American Plate, forming the steep rock layers and volcanic flows of the Olympic Peninsula. When the movement of plates decreased, the rocks rose and formed a large, uplifted area of sedimentary rock surrounded on three sides by basalt.

Glaciers pushing out from Canada covered northern Washington several times, most recently about 14,000 years ago. This ice sheet pushed against the Olympic Mountains, splitting the ice sheet into two lobes. One lobe pushed along the trough of Puget Sound, while the other followed the Strait of Juan de Fuca. Local glaciers advanced and retreated, with the larger ones forming the river valleys of the Queets, Quinault, and Hoh Rivers. During earlier glaciations, gravel and silt were deposited as far west as today's nearshore islands. Sixty major glaciers still cover the Olympic mountains, providing sources of cold water to the glacially fed rivers on the Olympic Peninsula. These same streams and rivers continue to cut into glacial debris and mountainsides, resulting in land

slumps or occasional massive landslides. This combination of geologic upheavals and weather conditions has produced about 30 major soil types on the western Olympic Peninsula alone (Storm *et al.* 1990; Kirk 1992).

The last glaciation (the Vashon Stade) can be correlated with fish distribution on the Olympic Peninsula (Mongillo and Hallock 1997). During this period, ice covered the northern, central, and eastern part of the Olympic Peninsula. The Chehalis River was the largest ice-free river, and the northern portion of this basin is commonly referred to as the Chehalis Refuge. As the ice receded, the coastal and interior drainages provided the major dispersal routes to the north for fish species from the Chehalis Refuge.

Climate. Precipitation on the west side of the Olympic Peninsula ranges from an average of 230 centimeters (90 inches) a year at the coast near Kalaloch to 508 centimeters (200 inches) or more for Mount Olympus. The ratio of overcast days to clear days is about two to one. This cloud cover keeps temperatures warmer in winter and cooler in summer. Little of the precipitation coming from the ocean reaches the east side of the mountains, and Sequim, Washington, located 56 kilometers (35 miles) northeast of the mountains, receives about only 46 centimeters (18 inches) of rain annually. The Olympic Peninsula's maritime climate exhibits mild fluctuations and few extremes, averaging 11 degrees Celsius (52 degrees Fahrenheit) annually with an average high of 16 degrees Celsius (60 degrees Fahrenheit) in July and 4 degrees Celsius (39 degrees Fahrenheit) in January.

Ecology. The Olympic Peninsula has the only temperate rain forest in the northern hemisphere. Kirk (1992) characterizes temperate rain forest as having the following characteristics:

- Wet, cool acidic soils.
- An abundant network of flowing water.
- Relatively little disturbance from wildfire or insect attack.
- Primarily conifers, fewer broadleaf trees.
- Multilayered growth providing canopies.
- Large numbers of epiphytes and mosses.
- Abundant organic debris covering the ground.

- Trees that include the largest and longest lived for their type.

Only about 3 percent remain of the more than one million acres of old-growth spruce (*Picea* spp.), hemlock (*Tsuga* spp.), and fir (*Abies* spp.) that historically carpeted the Olympic Peninsula. Most of the remaining old growth is in the Olympic National Park, which is also designated as a World Biosphere Reserve and World Heritage Site.

Fish Species. Currently 31 species of native fish inhabit the management unit (Table 2). The majority of native fish inhabiting the Olympic Peninsula are found in streams below 200 meters (656 feet) in elevation. The Satsop River area, just north of the mainstem Chehalis River, supports the greatest concentration of nongame native fish in Washington (Mongillo and Hallock 1997). In Hood Canal and the Strait of Juan de Fuca, fall Chinook salmon and summer chum (*O. keta*) salmon are listed as threatened species under the Endangered Species Act. In 2001, we proposed a rule to list the Dolly Varden as threatened in Washington due to similarity of appearance to bull trout (66 FR 1628). Marine and estuarine species that form an important prey base for bull trout include sandlance (*Ammodytes hexapterus*), surf smelt (*Hypomesus pretiosus*), and Pacific herring (*Clupea harengus pallasi*). Brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*), common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) and largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*) are nonnative fish that are found on the Olympic Peninsula and known or believed to impact bull trout.

Description of Core Areas

Skokomish Core Area (Mason County) (Figure 3). The Skokomish River, which drains into the southernmost portion of Hood Canal, is the largest tributary and has the largest estuary in the Hood Canal basin. Upland, tideland, riverine, and estuarine wetland ecosystems are found within the Skokomish estuary. Considering the increasing rarity of natural estuaries in the Puget Sound region, the estuary plays an especially important role for aquatic species.

The three major tributaries of the Skokomish River include the South Fork Skokomish River, North Fork Skokomish River, and Vance Creek (Figure 3).

Table 2. Native freshwater fish in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

Common Name	Scientific Name
Bull trout	<i>Salvelinus confluentus</i>
Coho salmon	<i>Oncorhynchus kisutch</i>
Pink salmon	<i>Oncorhynchus gorbuscha</i>
Chinook salmon	<i>Oncorhynchus tshawytscha</i>
Chum salmon	<i>Oncorhynchus keta</i>
Sockeye salmon	<i>Oncorhynchus nerka</i>
Steelhead trout	<i>Oncorhynchus mykiss</i>
Cutthroat trout	<i>Oncorhynchus clarki</i>
Dolly Varden	<i>Salvelinus malma</i>
Mountain whitefish	<i>Prosopium williamsoni</i>
Pygmy whitefish	<i>Prosopium coulteri</i>
Olympic mudminnow	<i>Novumbra hubbsi</i>
Redside shiner	<i>Richardsonius balteatus</i>
Longnose dace	<i>Rhinichthys osculus</i>
Speckled dace	<i>Rhinichthys cataractae</i>
Peamouth	<i>Mylocheilus caurinus</i>
Largemouth sucker	<i>Catostomus macrocheilus</i>
Coastrange sculpin	<i>Cottus aleuticus</i>
Torrent sculpin	<i>Cottus rhotheus</i>
Prickly sculpin	<i>Cottus asper</i>
Riffle sculpin	<i>Cottus gulosus</i>
Reticulate sculpin	<i>Cottus perplexus</i>
Shorthead sculpin	<i>Cottus confusus</i>

Table 2 (cont.) Native freshwater fish in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

Common Name	Scientific Name
Threespine stickleback	<i>Gasterosteus aculeatus</i>
Green sturgeon	<i>Acipenser medirostris</i>
Pacific lamprey	<i>Lampetra tridentata</i>
River lamprey	<i>Lampetar ayresi</i>
Western brook lamprey	<i>Lampetra richardsoni</i>
White sturgeon	<i>Acipenser transmountanus</i>
Longfin smelt	<i>Spirinchus thaleichtys</i>
Northern pikeminnow	<i>Piscivorous ptichocheilus</i>

The Skokomish River system contains approximately 89 kilometers (55 miles) of accessible habitat for anadromous fish: South Fork Skokomish River and tributaries with 59 kilometers (37 miles), North Fork Skokomish River and tributaries with 15 kilometers (9 miles), and mainstem Skokomish River with 15 kilometers (9 miles) of accessible habitat. The mainstem Skokomish River splits into the north and south forks at river mile 9. The Skokomish core area includes all streams flowing in the Skokomish River basin, Lake Cushman, Lake Kokanee, and the estuary of the river.

The North Fork Skokomish River flows southeast from its headwaters in the Olympic Mountains to its confluence with Lake Cushman, a distance of about 22 kilometers (14 miles). Lake Cushman is a 1,620-hectare (4,000-acre) impoundment in the Olympic National Forest. Before the completion of two dams in 1926 and 1930, Lake Cushman was a natural oligotrophic (nutrient poor but oxygen rich) lake with a mean depth of 61 meters (200 feet); it was smaller than the current reservoir (Brenkman 1998). Below the lower dam at river mile 17.27, the North Fork Skokomish River continues to flow southward to its confluence with the South Fork Skokomish River.

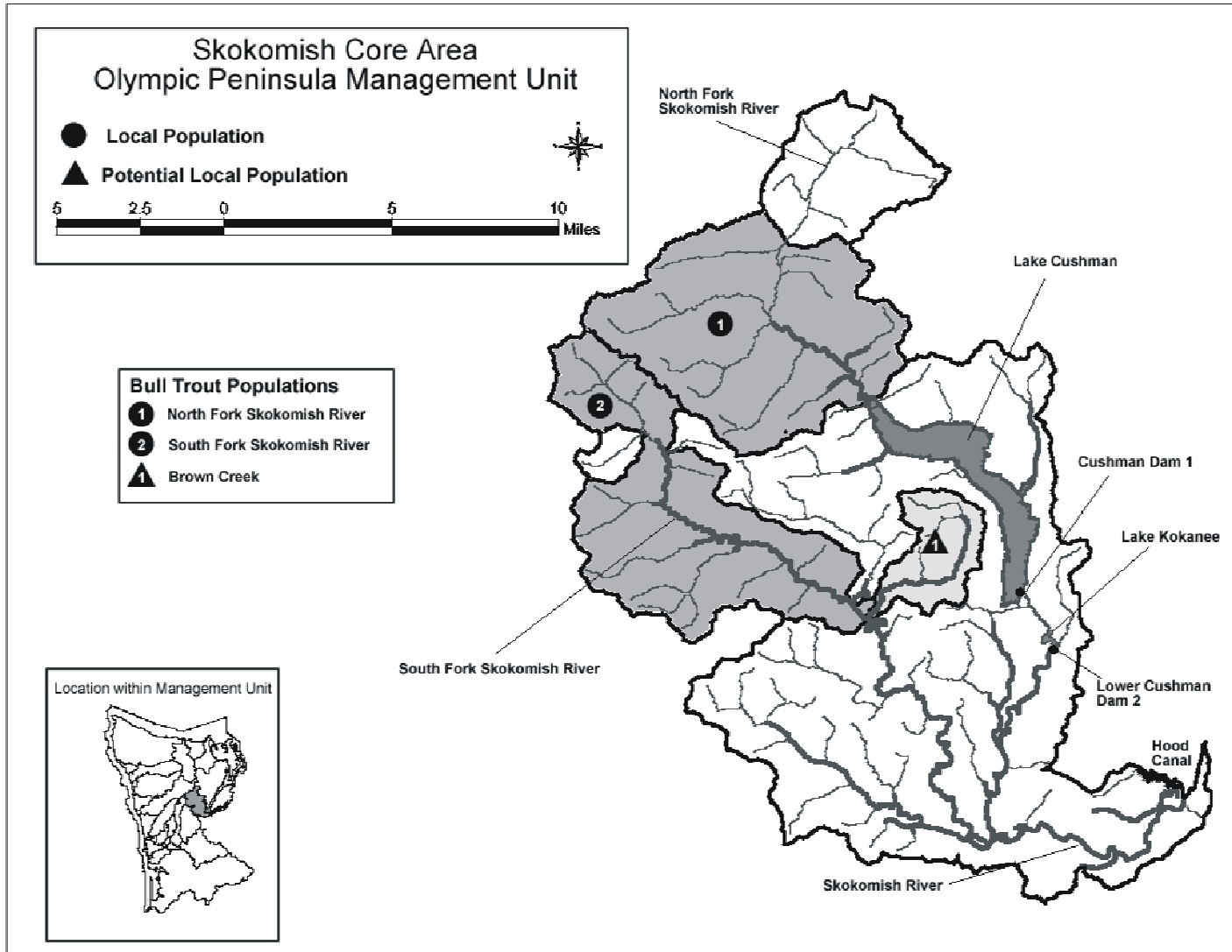


Figure 3. Skokomish core area for bull trout. Highlighted streams are key freshwater habitat for recovery.

The river basin upstream of Lake Cushman drains 126 square kilometers (49 square miles). The river descends in elevation from 1,622 meters (5,321 feet) in the headwaters to 225 meters (738 feet) at its confluence with Lake Cushman. Steep montane topography in basaltic geologic material results in high-gradient tributaries in the upper basin. River discharge[†] is strongly influenced by rainfall in the winter, while spring runoff is predominately influenced by snowmelt (Brenkman *et al.* 2001). Mean annual precipitation from 1984 to 1996 at Cushman Dam No. 1 was 231 centimeters (91 inches), most of which occurred as rain from November to January (Brenkman 1998).

The South Fork Skokomish River originates within Olympic National Park, approximately 1,005 meters (3,297 feet) above sea level and 44 kilometers (27 miles) upstream from the mainstem Skokomish River. A series of 5- to 10-meter (15- to 30-foot) waterfalls at river mile 24 prevent upstream migration of bull trout in the South Fork Skokomish River. The two major tributaries of the South Fork Skokomish River are Vance Creek with 7 kilometers (4 miles) of accessible stream and Brown Creek with 9 kilometers (6 miles) of accessible stream. Accessible habitat in the remaining tributaries is relatively short, ranging from 0.4 kilometer (0.2 mile) to 2 kilometers (1 mile). The area upstream from river mile 19 has remained relatively pristine. The majority of juvenile and subadult (less than 400 millimeters [16 inches]) bull trout in the system are found between river mile 19 and the anadromous barrier at river mile 24 (Ogg and Taiber 2002). Downstream from river mile 19.3, the river increasingly meanders through a wide valley until the valley constricts into a steep-walled canyon known as the “gorge” at river mile 10. This area, relatively inaccessible to anglers, contains deep pools and a stable channel. At river mile 3, the South Fork Skokomish flows into the Skokomish Valley and eventually joins the North Fork Skokomish River to form the mainstem Skokomish River. The mainstem Skokomish River channel within the valley is highly aggraded[†] (filled with sediment deposits) and floods frequently.

The upper North Fork Skokomish River and most of the 14 named tributaries upstream from Lake Cushman are located primarily within Olympic National Park, and small private landowners occupy the majority of the valley. The U.S. Forest Service and private timber companies own the majority of the upper South Fork Skokomish River. The Skokomish Indian Reservation, located

at the mouth of the Skokomish River, includes the lower 10.5 kilometers (6.5 miles) of the mainstem.

Quinault Core Area (Jefferson and Grays Harbor Counties) (Figure 4). The Quinault core area includes the mainstem Quinault River, North Fork Quinault River, tributaries, Lake Quinault, and the estuary of the river. The upper mainstem Quinault River upstream from the confluence with the North Fork Quinault River is sometimes referred to as the East Fork Quinault River. The Quinault River originates at Anderson Glacier in the Olympic Mountains and flows approximately 113 kilometers (70 miles) to the Pacific Ocean, with a total watershed area of 118,933 hectares (293,880 acres). The North Fork Quinault River originates as meltwater and springs along the slopes of Mount Seattle before it joins the mainstem Quinault River at river mile 48. From the confluence of the North Fork Quinault River, the gradient decreases and the Quinault River meanders for another 16 kilometers (10 miles) down the valley to Lake Quinault, a 1,509-hectare (3,729-acre) natural lake. Downstream of the lake the terrain becomes gentle, and the river widens out into the sinuous, braided channel[†] characteristic of large alluvial[†] glacial rivers as it flows the remaining 53 kilometers (33 miles) to the mouth at the Pacific Ocean, near the community of Taholah, Washington. The lowlands in the western part of this watershed contain several hundred feet of glacial deposits and lake and swamp deposits formed during interglacial periods.

Annual precipitation in the Quinault Basin is high, averaging 371 centimeters (146 inches) at Lake Quinault. In the upper watershed much of the precipitation falls as snow, while most precipitation falls as rain west of Lake Quinault. Water temperatures in the glacier-dominated upper watershed are cold and suitable for bull trout, with a maximum summer temperature of 13.5 degrees Celsius (56 degrees Fahrenheit) and minimum winter temperature of 0.5 degrees Celsius (33 degrees Fahrenheit) recorded at the United States Geological Survey gauging station on the North Fork Quinault River (river mile 47.5) between 1960 and 1985. Water temperature data taken at river mile 37.5 just above Lake Quinault indicate that the daily averages ranged from 10.1 to 13.6 degrees Celsius (50.2 to 56.5 degrees Fahrenheit) in the summer. The lake stratifies thermally during the summer months, with the surface layer being warmer and a thermocline[†] preventing mixing of the layers. During 1989 and 1990, surface

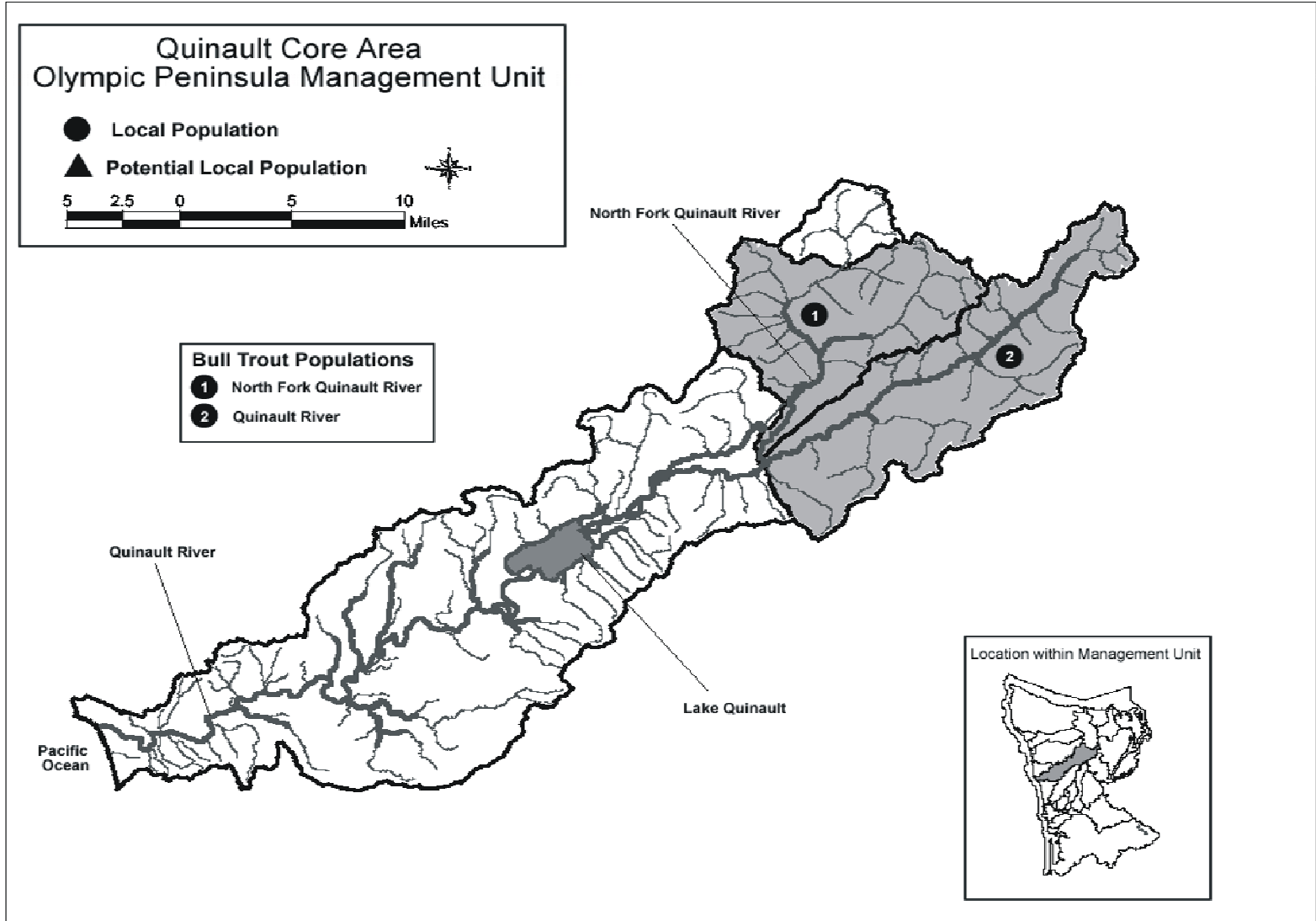


Figure 4. Quinault core area for bull trout. Highlighted streams are key freshwater habitat for recovery.

water temperatures ranged from 5.8 to 20 degrees Celsius (42.4 to 68 degrees Fahrenheit) while the temperature 10 meters (30 feet) below the surface ranged between 5 and 7 degrees Celsius (41 and 45 degrees Fahrenheit) (Quinault Fisheries Division 1991). Summer water temperatures in the lower river are warm and can exceed 16 degrees Celsius (61 degrees Fahrenheit) for several days between late June and the end of September. In contrast, temperatures in the tributaries appear to be cooler, with daily averages of 8.9 to 13.1 degrees Celsius (48 to 56 degrees Fahrenheit) measured in Cook and Boulder Creeks during the summer months.

Approximately 51 percent of the watershed lies within Olympic National Park, including all of the upper drainage and headwaters. The Quinault Indian Nation owns 32 percent of the basin, comprising most of the area downstream of Lake Quinault (Quinault Indian Nation and U.S. Forest Service 1999). The U.S. Forest Service manages 13 percent of the watershed, including the eastern part of the Cook Creek watershed and the southwest half of the Lake Quinault watershed between Quinault Ridge and the upper Quinault River. Private landholdings comprise only 4 percent of the lands in the basin, and Rayonier Timberlands Company is the largest private landholder, managing 5,677 hectares (14,030 acres) in the Cook Creek area (Quinault Indian Nation and U.S. Forest Service 1999).

Queets Core Area (Grays Harbor and Jefferson Counties) (Figure 5).

The Queets core area includes all streams flowing in the Queets River basin and the estuary. The Queets River originates as meltwaters from glaciers on Mount Queets and from permanent snowfields on Bear Pass and Mount Barnes. The Queets River flows 82.7 kilometers (51.4 miles) from its headwaters to the Pacific Ocean. Tributaries drain from precipitous ridges, but the mainstem and lower tributaries are characterized by the wide, moderate gradient valleys and braided channels typical of a glacial river system. The Clearwater River is a major tributary to the Queets River that flows 59.1 kilometers (36.7 miles) from its headwaters to the confluence with the Queets River at river mile 6.8 and contains 285.2 kilometers (177.2 miles) of tributary streams. The Queets River contains 518 kilometers (321.9 miles) of tributaries in addition to the Clearwater River drainage. Other major tributaries of the Queets River include the Salmon and Sams Rivers and Matheny and Tshletshy Creeks.

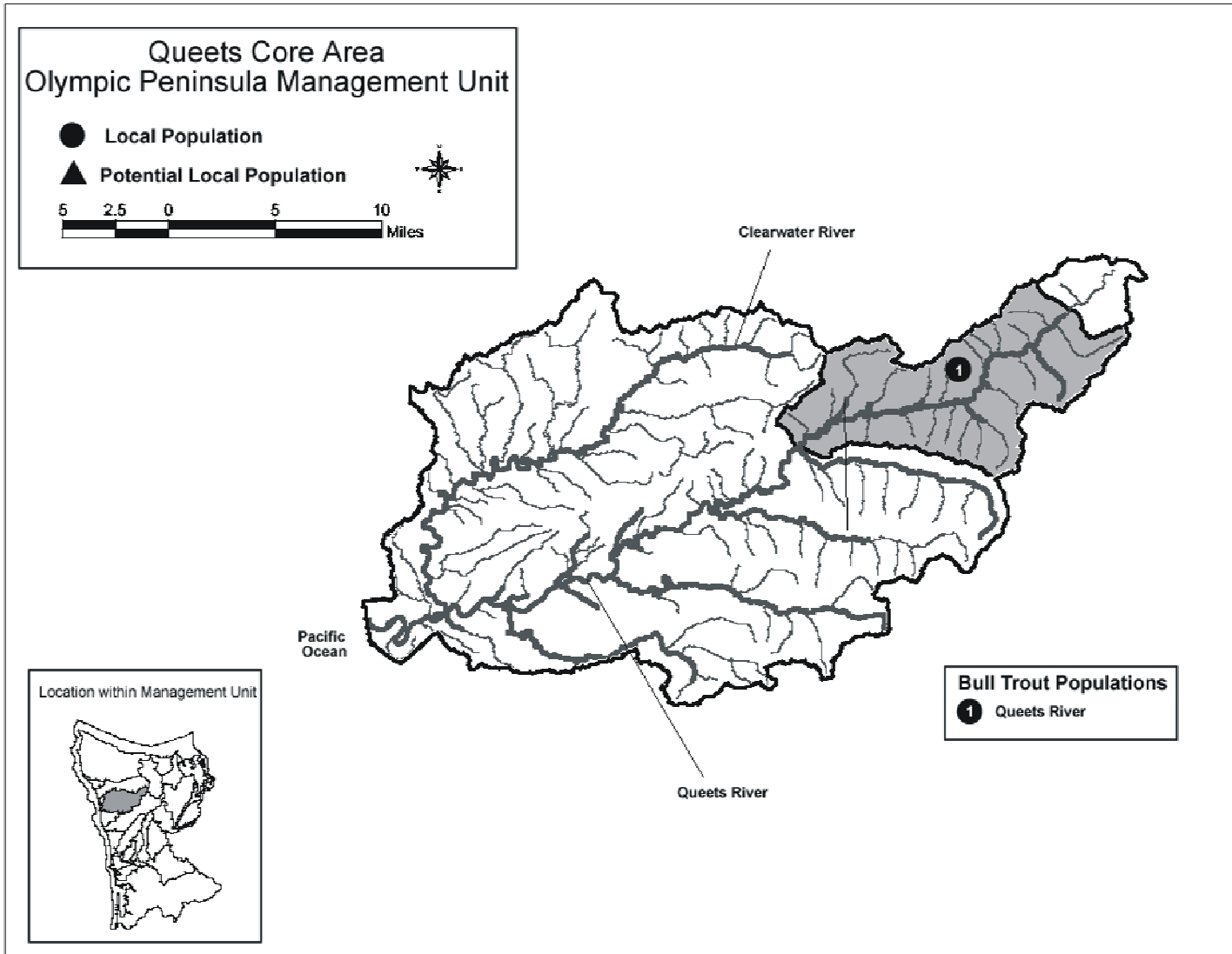


Figure 5. Queets core area for bull trout. Highlighted streams are key freshwater habitat for recovery.

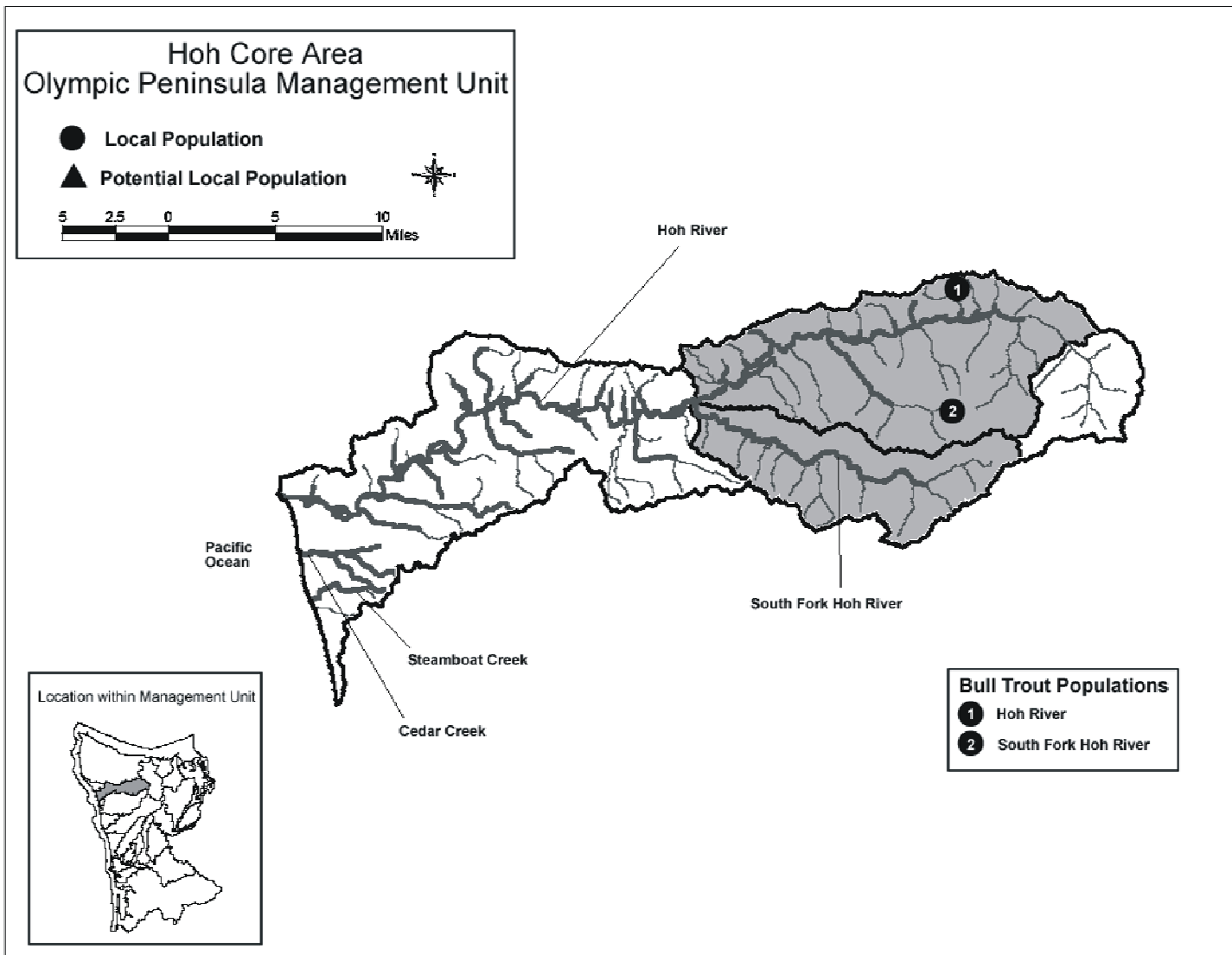


Figure 6. Hoh core area for bull trout. Highlighted streams are key freshwater habitat for recovery.

The Queets River watershed has an average annual precipitation of 305 to 508 centimeters (120 to 200 inches). The wettest season is between November and April and winter storms can deliver 25 centimeters (10 inches) of rain over a 24-hour period. Elevations below 500 meters (1,640 feet) are generally rainfall dominated, while mixed rain-on-snow events are common between 500 and 1,000 meters (1,640 and 3,280 feet). Winter precipitation falls mainly in the form of snow above 1,000 meters (3,280 feet) (WDNR 1997).

The Queets mainstem is contained entirely within a narrow corridor of Olympic National Park upstream of river mile 8.1. The short section between the Olympic National Park boundary and the Pacific Ocean flows through the Quinault Indian Reservation. Except for short terminal sections entering the Queets River mainstem, the upstream areas of tributary streams below river mile 24.1 are outside of the Olympic National Park boundary. The Clearwater River flows primarily through State and private lands. The Salmon River is contained mostly within the boundaries of the Quinault Indian Reservation. Matheny Creek and Sams River flow mainly through the Olympic National Forest.

Hoh Core Area (Jefferson and Clallam Counties) (Figure 6). The Hoh River is a large, glacially influenced river with an extensive, active flood plain. It flows westward from its headwaters in Olympic National Park at 1,216 meters (3,989 feet) elevation to its confluence with the Pacific Ocean. The headwaters of the Hoh drain the Baily Range and the north slope of Mount Olympus. The Hoh River flows 90.3 kilometers (56.1 miles) from its headwaters to the Pacific Ocean and contains 441.9 kilometers (274.6 miles) of tributaries (Phinney and Bucknell 1975). Its major tributaries originate from numerous alpine glaciers and snowfields in the upper portions of the watershed. Numerous spring-fed terrace tributaries also feed the Hoh River and its tributaries. A series of cascades in the upper Hoh River located at river mile 48.5 (upstream of the confluence with Glacier Creek) may be a barrier to upstream passage of fish (Phinney and Bucknell 1975). The Hoh core area includes all streams flowing in the Hoh River basin.

The South Fork Hoh joins the Hoh River at river mile 30 and descends in elevation from 1,475 meters (4,839 feet) to 128 meters (420 feet) at its confluence

with the Hoh River. A possible barrier to upstream fish passage in the South Fork Hoh exists upstream of river mile 14 (Phinney and Bucknell 1975).

The annual precipitation in the headwaters of the Hoh River is estimated at 610 centimeters (240 inches), the highest known rainfall in the lower 48 states (Schreiner *et al.* 1996). River discharge is strongly influenced by this rainfall in winter, and by glacial melt and snowmelt in the spring. Most tributary streams located outside Olympic National Park are predominately influenced by rainfall.

The upper section of the Hoh watershed (approximately 65 percent of the watershed) lies entirely within Olympic National Park. The lower reaches flow through State, Tribal, and private lands. The area of the Hoh River outside of the park extends from river mile 1.5 to river mile 30.

Elwha Core Area (Clallam and Jefferson Counties) (Figure 7). The Elwha River, located on the north side of the Olympic Peninsula, is the largest river draining into the Strait of Juan de Fuca. Historically, the Elwha River may have been the most productive salmon river within the Olympic Peninsula (WSCC 2000a). The Elwha River originates on the south and east sides of Mount Olympus in Olympic National Park, flowing south then turning northward to the Strait of Juan De Fuca. Most of the tributary headwaters originate at about 1,219 meters (4,000 foot) elevation. The Elwha River drains 84,000 hectares (321 square miles or 208,000 acres). Despite the rugged headwater terrain, the river's gradient is mostly moderate for much of its length. The mainstem is approximately 72 kilometers (45 miles) in length with 160 kilometers (100 miles) of tributary streams. The Elwha core area includes the Elwha River, its tributaries, Lake Mills and Lake Aldwell, and the estuary.

The construction of two dams (Elwha Dam in 1914 and Glines Canyon Dam in 1927) divided the Elwha River into three relatively isolated sections: the Lower Elwha River (downstream from the Elwha Dam), the middle Elwha River (between Elwha Dam and Glines Canyon Dam), and the upper Elwha (upstream of Glines Canyon Dam). There is no upstream passage at either dam and it is believed that there is little habitat downstream from the dams suitable for bull trout spawning and incubation. Elevated stream temperatures in both the lower

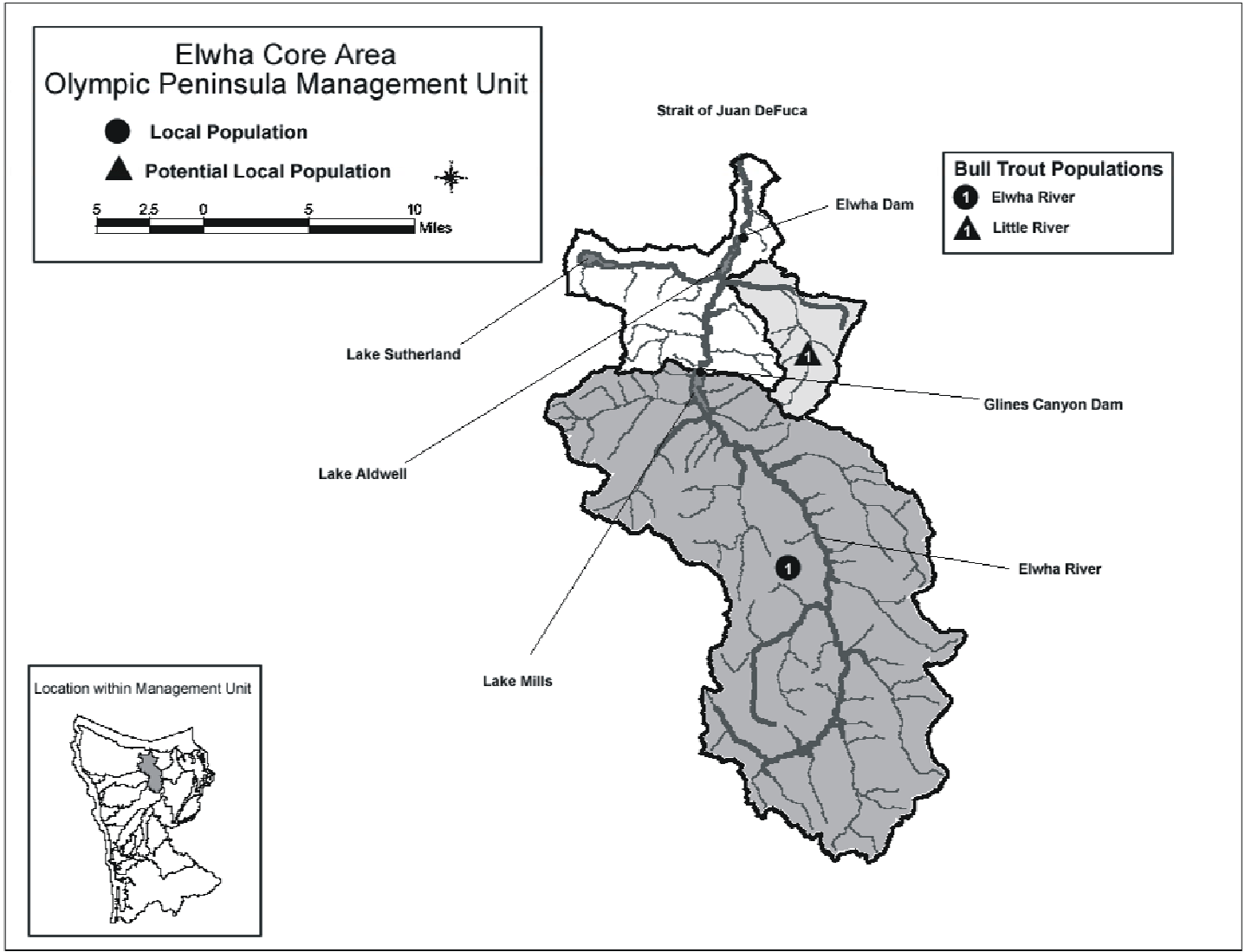


Figure 7. Elwha core area for bull trout. Highlighted streams are key freshwater habitat for recovery.

and middle reaches of the Elwha River likely limit reproducing populations of bull trout (McHenry 2002).

Eighty-three percent of the area drained by the Elwha River is located within Olympic National Park. The lower reaches flow through State, Tribal, U.S. Forest Service, and private lands.

Dungeness Core Area (Clallam and Jefferson Counties) (Figure 8).

The Dungeness core area includes the Dungeness River, its primary tributary the Gray Wolf River, associated tributaries, and the estuary. The Dungeness River, located in the northeastern corner of the Olympic Peninsula, drains into the Strait of Juan de Fuca. Mount Constance, the highest point in the watershed, forms the southern boundary. The Dungeness River flows 51.3 kilometers (31.9 miles) from its headwaters to the Strait of Juan de Fuca and contains 361.3 kilometers (224.5 miles) of tributaries (Phinney and Bucknell 1975). Major subdrainages within the watershed include Meadowbrook, Matriotti, Hurd, Bear, Canyon, and Gray Wolf subbasins[†].

The primarily sedimentary geology in the Dungeness River watershed has an overlay of lake deposits on top of glacial and alluvial moraines[†] that is largely responsible for the inherent instability of the upper watershed (WSSC 2000a). This instability of the upper watershed has provided the upper Dungeness River with a significant load of coarse and fine sediments. As these sediments were transported out of the upper watershed, they were deposited in a large alluvial fan[†]. This alluvial fan gives the “Dungeness Valley” a unique topography and contributes to stream instability (WSSC 2000a). As the river deposited sediments in the lower valley, channel migration occurred across the alluvial fan. The Dungeness River historically flowed over, down, and throughout what are currently tributary streams. Many of these streams have been affected by irrigation ditches, river dikes, and channelization[†] in the fertile former floodplain[†] of the Dungeness River.

Federal and State agencies, including the National Park Service, U.S. Forest Service, and Washington Department of Natural Resources, manage more than 50 percent of the watershed. Much of the private land is in large holdings

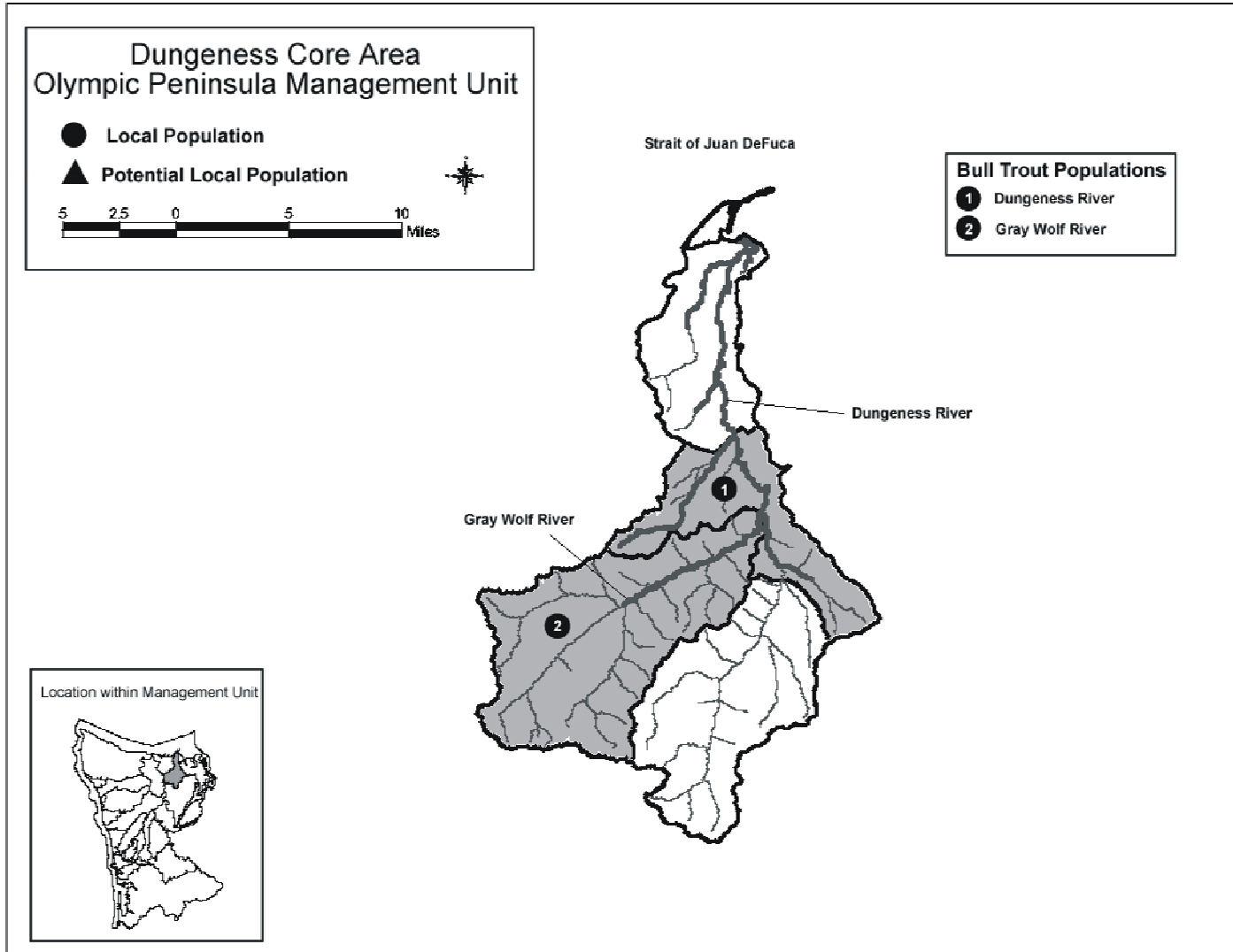


Figure 8. Dungeness core area for bull trout. Highlighted streams are key freshwater habitat for recovery.

for timber production. In recent years, many ownerships have changed and forest lands are being converted to residential and other uses. Land uses include pasture, hayland and cropland on both commercial and small farms, residential development scattered throughout the lower watershed, private and public forest land in the upper watershed, as well as a large portion of Olympic National Park in the headwaters areas.

DISTRIBUTION AND ABUNDANCE

Status of Bull Trout at the Time of Listing

On November 1, 1999, we issued a final rule listing the Coastal-Puget Sound population of bull trout as a threatened species (64 FR 58910). In the final listing rule, we identified 18 subpopulations[†] occurring in 9 river basins within the area now delineated as the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit². We considered habitat degradation and fragmentation, blockage of migratory corridors, poor water quality, harvest, and introduced nonnative species as the greatest threats to bull trout in this area. Although subpopulations were an appropriate unit upon which to base the 1999 listing decision, the recovery plan has revised the biological terminology to better reflect both our current understanding of bull trout life history and conservation biology theory. Therefore, subpopulation terms will not be used in this chapter. Instead, recovery of the bull trout will be based on bull trout “core areas” as described above in Part I, Recovery Plan Terminology and Structure.

Current Distribution and Abundance

Bull Trout and Dolly Varden. Bull trout and Dolly Varden occur together only within the area of the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment and in British Columbia, Canada. Although these two species of native char were previously considered a single species, the bull trout and the Dolly Varden are now formally recognized as two separate species (Cavender 1978;

²Due to the lack of sufficient genetic analysis for most subpopulations, bull trout and Dolly Varden were not identified as distinct subpopulations at the time of listing. The term “native char” was used to describe populations that could include both Dolly Varden and bull trout.

Robins *et al.* 1980; Bond 1992). Currently, genetic analyses can distinguish between the two species (Crane *et al.* 1994; Baxter *et al.* 1997; Leary and Allendorf 1997). In the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, Dolly Varden have been confirmed in the Dungeness and Quinault core areas (Leary and Allendorf 1997; Young, *in litt.* 2001; Spruell and Maxwell 2002). Dolly Varden have also been confirmed in the Soleduck River above an anadromous barrier. No bull trout have been identified in the Soleduck River and this area is not identified as a core area.

In the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment, Dolly Varden tend to be distributed as isolated tributary populations above natural anadromous barriers (as in the Dungeness core area), while bull trout are distributed below these barriers (WDFW 1998; Spruell and Maxwell 2002). An exception to this is found in the Quinault core area where Dolly Varden and bull trout occur within the same area in the upper Quinault River and are not isolated above a barrier (Leary and Allendorf 1997). In all other core areas within the management unit, all char sampled have been identified genetically as bull trout. Based on this information, we have assumed that all native char observed in accessible anadromous reaches other than in the Quinault core area are bull trout.

Bull Trout Distribution. In portions of the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, bull trout may not currently occupy habitat that is believed to have supported reproducing bull trout historically. For example, credible anecdotal accounts (J. Webster, U. S. Forest Service, pers. comm. 2002; Keizer 1990; Donald 1991) provide historical documentation of large fluvial bull trout in the Satsop River, a tributary to the Chehalis River. Recent surveys of the Satsop River did not detect bull trout in tributaries where they were previously documented (L. Ogg, U.S. Forest Service, pers. comm. 2003a). Additional bull trout populations may be fragmented and isolated in headwater locations due to natural or manmade barriers.

Currently, bull trout are distributed throughout most of the large rivers and associated tributary systems within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit (WDFW 1998). At present there are 10 local populations distributed among the 6 identified core areas (Skokomish, Dungeness, Elwha, Hoh, Queets, Quinault). The recovery team also identified two potential local populations[†]: Brown Creek

in the Skokomish core area and Little River in the Elwha core area. Both Brown Creek and Little River are connected to bull trout occupied habitat, have suitable water temperatures, and would provide additional local populations in core areas that have two or fewer identified local populations (McHenry, *in litt.* 2003; L. Ogg, pers. comm. 2003c).

Bull trout exhibit multiple life history strategies throughout their range (Rieman and McIntyre 1993). Bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit demonstrate all known migratory life history patterns (*i.e.*, anadromous, adfluvial, and fluvial) for this species, and nonmigratory, or resident, life history patterns may also be present, although this has not yet been confirmed. There are two naturally occurring adfluvial bull trout populations within the management unit; one is associated with Lake Cushman in the upper North Fork Skokomish drainage, and the other is associated with Lake Quinault in the Quinault River drainage.

Within the range of bull trout in the coterminous United States, anadromy, or technically “amphidromy,” is unique to the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment. Unlike strict anadromy, amphidromous individuals often return seasonally to freshwater as subadults, sometimes for several years, before returning to spawn (Wilson 1997). Subadult bull trout in the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment can move into marine waters to forage or migrate and return to freshwater to take advantage of seasonal forage provided by salmonids eggs, smolts, or juveniles.

Bull trout in this population segment also move through marine waters to access independent tributaries (tributaries that connect directly to marine waters) to forage or, potentially, to take refuge from high flows in their core areas (Brenkman and Corbett, *in litt.* 2003a,b). Independent tributaries used by bull trout on the Olympic Peninsula are not believed to support spawning populations of bull trout and are only accessible to bull trout by swimming through marine waters from core areas. These independent tributaries include Bell, Morse, Ennis, and Siebert Creeks in the Strait of Juan de Fuca; Goodman, Cedar, Kalaloch, Steamboat, Mosquito, and Joe Creeks, and the Raft, Moclips, and Copalis Rivers on the coast; and Wishkah and Humptulips Rivers in Grays Harbor. Although there are anecdotal and historical observations of bull trout in Hood Canal

tributaries (e.g. Hamma Hamma, Dosewallips, Duckabush Rivers), there are no current records of bull trout in independent tributaries to Hood Canal (U.S. Commission on Fish and Fisheries, *in litt.* 1913; McLeod 1944; P. Hilgert, R2 Resources, pers. comm. 2000). Independent tributaries documented as being used seasonally by bull trout on the Olympic Peninsula are also productive salmon streams (Phinney and Bucknell 1975).

Migratory forms appear to develop when habitat conditions allow movement between spawning and rearing streams and larger rivers and lakes and, for Olympic Peninsula bull trout, marine and estuarine waters where foraging opportunities are enhanced (Kraemer 1994; Frissell 1999). Benefits to migratory bull trout include greater growth in the more productive waters of larger streams, lakes, estuaries, and nearshore marine areas; greater fecundity resulting in increased reproductive potential; and dispersal of the population across space and time. In the Skagit River system, a benefit for anadromous bull trout with access to more productive marine forage is reflected in the size of these fish at maturity. Fluvial and anadromous bull trout in the Skagit River system both reach sexual maturity at around 4 years of age; however, the anadromous fish were almost 100 millimeters larger than their fluvial counterparts at that age (Kraemer, *in litt.* 2003).

Macroinvertebrates are a major food item for bull trout fry before they shift to a piscivorous (fish-eating) diet. In fresh water, important forage includes loose macroinvertebrates, salmon eggs, salmon fry and smolts, sculpin, whitefish, and other small fish.

Anadromous and fluvial life history forms typically have widely distributed foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat. Migratory bull trout use nonnatal (habitat outside of their spawning and early rearing habitat) watersheds to forage, migrate, and overwinter (Brenkman and Corbett, *in litt.* 2003a,b). Larger juvenile and subadult bull trout can migrate throughout a core area looking for feeding opportunities, or they can move through marine areas to independent tributaries. Because bull trout forage on salmon fry and eggs, the recovery team identified reaches accessible to salmon both in streams within core areas and in independent tributaries outside of core areas as freshwater foraging habitat for bull trout (Phinney and Bucknell 1975). The recovery team identified

accessible habitat occupied by salmonids, where these fish can provide a forage base for bull trout, as essential and biologically important for bull trout (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003b).

Subadult and adult bull trout in the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment also forage in marine waters where the principal forage include surf smelt and other small schooling fish (*e.g.*, sandlance, herring) (Kraemer 1994, Brenkman and Corbett, *in litt.* 2003a). Although foraging bull trout are likely to concentrate in forage fish spawning areas, they can be found throughout accessible estuarine and nearshore habitats. Maintaining these forage species and marine foraging areas is essential and biologically important for maintaining the anadromous life form of bull trout. The conservation needs for bull trout in this management unit extend into the marine waters and many independent tributary drainages that flow to marine waters.

Although multiple age classes of bull trout have been observed in all core areas, spawning has not yet been documented in the Quinault and Elwha core areas. Sampling for migratory bull trout is especially difficult due to their wide-ranging seasonal movements. Radio telemetry has been a useful tool for providing new and important information about spawning sites and movement, but it is limited by its ability to document fish movements within a narrow range of detection. For example, when bull trout from the Hoh River move into an adjacent river, aerial flights along the coast will detect those individuals that are in fresh water and near the mouth of the river. If the fish have moved further upstream, flights must be made up the river to detect those individuals. If the fish are in marine waters, the signal will not be detected.

Current data on distribution and abundance in the Olympic Peninsula is limited and has been collected by a variety of methods. Sources of data include historical reports, incidental bull trout counts obtained during other fish surveys, salmon smolt and adult traps, creel survey data, redd counts, adult counts, radio telemetry surveys, and beach seining. There are significant differences in spawning survey protocols (*e.g.*, different survey locations, different survey distances, different survey times, and the number of subsequent surveys per site). These survey protocol differences, coupled with extremely difficult access, concurrent coho salmon spawning, very high or very low flows, and poor

visibility during glacial melt, have made it difficult to locate spawning areas. An increased and sustained survey effort has been identified as a high priority by the recovery team and would likely identify additional local populations in most core areas.

The Washington Department of Ecology analyzed all spawning data for bull trout west of the Cascade Mountains to determine the elevation above which spawning would most likely occur (WDOE 2002). The recovery team used this analysis to help identify local populations where no, or very little, spawning site information was available. All spawning sites occurred above 150 meters (500 feet) in elevation. Table 3 lists the streams where spawning is known to occur in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

There is currently insufficient data to confidently estimate bull trout abundance for many core areas and for the entire management unit. The Skokomish core area is the only core area that has been monitored through redd counts and adult counts at a level where estimates can be made at the local population and core area levels.

Table 3. Known spawning streams in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit (indentation indicates a tributary of the previous nonindented stream); “rm” = river mile.

CORE AREA	KNOWN SPAWNING STREAMS
Skokomish River	South Fork Skokomish River (rm 19 to rm 24) Church Creek (rm 0 to rm 0.5) North Fork Skokomish River (above Cushman Dam) Elk Creek Slate Creek
Hoh River	Hoh River (rm 43 to rm 48) “OGS” Creek (near mouth) Cougar Creek (lower portion) South Fork Hoh River (rm 9 to rm 15)
Queets River	Queets River (rm 45 to rm 48)
Dungeness River	Gray Wolf River (rm 2 to rm 4)

Skokomish Core Area. Adfluvial, fluvial, and possibly anadromous and resident bull trout inhabit this core area. There are two local populations identified in this core area: the North Fork Skokomish River local population and the South Fork Skokomish River local population. Brown Creek, a tributary to the South Fork Skokomish River, has been identified as a potential local population.

The North Fork Skokomish River local population includes bull trout that inhabit Lake Cushman in Olympic National Forest and the river upstream from the reservoir in Olympic National Park. Results from genetic analyses of four fin clips collected in the North Fork Skokomish River confirmed the presence of bull trout (Brenkman 1998). Adfluvial bull trout inhabit the reservoir at Lake Cushman, the North Fork Skokomish River, and Elk and Slate Creeks (Brenkman 1998). Bull trout have also been documented upstream from Lake Cushman to the confluence of Four Stream in Olympic National Park (river mile 27.96 to river mile 31.50). There is no evidence of resident bull trout in nine tributaries to the upper North Fork Skokomish River despite extensive electrofishing and day snorkel surveys (Brenkman 1998). A series of cascades (Staircase Rapids) above Lake Cushman may prevent upstream passage of some fish species. The Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (1998) maintains that Staircase Rapids is a barrier to upstream migration of bull trout. However, Olympic National Park biologists observed adult bull trout estimated up to 63.5 centimeters (25 inches) in length upstream of Staircase Rapids. Olympic National Park personnel believe these large fish originated from Lake Cushman. Tagging or other studies are needed to determine whether bull trout with a fluvial or resident life history form exist in the river, and if so, whether these fish are reproductively isolated from adfluvial bull trout that migrate from the reservoir (Brenkman, *in litt.* 2003b).

Historical accounts indicate the presence of native char in Lake Cushman prior to its impoundment (Harza Northwest, Inc., *in litt.* 1991). Although specific data are lacking on whether bull trout were able to ascend the series of cascades (Little and Big Falls) prior to the construction of Cushman Dams 1 and 2, historical records indicate that Chinook salmon and steelhead migrated upstream past the two falls to reach their spawning habitat (Stetson, *in litt.* 1925; Mayhall, *in litt.* 1926; Pollock, *in litt.* 1929; Moore, *in litt.* 1948). Since the falls

downstream of the Cushman Dams are described as being a series of cascades, it is likely that bull trout were also able to pass these turbulent areas. Surveys for bull trout have not been conducted in Lake Kokanee (formed by Cushman Dam 2) or its tributaries, and little is known about bull trout use of the North Fork Skokomish River downstream of the lake.

Available habitat for bull trout spawning in the North Fork Skokomish River upstream from Lake Cushman appears to be limited. Spawning has been observed from river mile 28 to a point upstream near the confluence of Four Stream (Brenkman 1998), although most spawning occurs downstream from Staircase Rapids. Adult adfluvial bull trout typically enter the North Fork Skokomish River in October, although some fish enter as early as May. Increased river discharge and decreased water temperature appear to influence timing of migration; spawning may occur as late as early December (Brenkman *et al.* 2001).

The maximum estimated lengths of adult bull trout upstream and downstream of Staircase Rapids were 635 millimeters (25 inches) and 813 millimeters (32 inches), respectively. The ages of bull trout from 440 millimeters (17 inches) to 850 millimeters (33 inches) in length ranged from 3 to 16 years based on analysis of otoliths[†] (structures in the fish ear) from fish collected in 1968 and 1969 (WDFW 1998).

Observations of young-of-year and juvenile bull trout are limited despite extensive day snorkel surveys throughout 5.6 kilometers (3.5 miles) of the North Fork Skokomish River (Brenkman 1998). Low numbers of young-of-year and juvenile bull trout were found in the river and Elk and Slate Creeks during the summer months. The lower portion of Slate Creek often goes dry during summer months. Elk and Slate Creeks likely do not support multiple year classes of juvenile bull trout on an annual basis, based on extreme low or no flow conditions during summer months. Based on the professional judgement and experience of members of the recovery team, Elk and Slate Creeks are considered part of the North Fork Skokomish River local population (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003a).

Snorkel and walking surveys of adult bull trout have been conducted annually in the North Fork Skokomish River above Lake Cushman since 1973, which likely represents the longest term bull trout data set in Washington (Figure 9; Brenkman, *in litt.* 2003a). Adult counts declined from 391 in 1973 to 81 in 1979. No surveys were conducted from 1980 through 1984; however, harvest for bull trout in the North Fork Skokomish River above Lake Cushman was eliminated in 1982 and in Lake Cushman in 1986 (WDFW 1998). After elimination of harvest, the number of adult bull trout in the North Fork Skokomish River increased from a low of 4 in 1985 to a high of 412 in 1993. Numbers of bull trout remained relatively stable from 1990 through 1996; counts during this period averaged 302 adults, and ranged from 250 to 413. More recent snorkel counts indicate a decline in numbers of adult bull trout since that time, as counts from 1998 through 2002 averaged only 95 adult bull trout (range 89 to 105; Figure 9) (Brenkman, *in litt.* 2003a).

In the South Fork Skokomish River fluvial bull trout occupy the river from its mouth upstream to a natural barrier at river mile 23.5. Snorkel surveys accounted for one to two bull trout observed each mile. The total number of adult bull trout in the South Fork Skokomish River local population is estimated by the Olympic National Forest to be around 60 individuals (WSCC 2003). Genetic analysis of 25 samples from the South Fork Skokomish River identified that the fish were bull trout (Leary and Allendorf 1997). Although bull trout occur throughout the mainstem South Fork and in a majority of tributaries, the highest densities are found above river mile 18.3. Juvenile bull trout have been observed in the South Fork Skokomish River downstream as far as river mile 0.2 and in every tributary upstream from river mile 0.2. Low numbers of multiple age classes of bull trout have been observed in the anadromous reaches of Brown, LeBar, and Pine Creeks. Higher numbers have been detected in Church Creek (Olympic National Forest, *in litt.* 2003).

Following several years of intensive surveys to locate bull trout redds (nests constructed by females in streambed gravels where eggs are deposited and fertilization occurs), 22 redds were detected in 2000 (Ogg and Stutsman 2002). Twenty redds were located in five spawning areas between river mile 19 and river mile 23.5 in the South Fork Skokomish River, and two were located in the lower 0.5 mile of Church Creek. One questionable redd was observed in Brown Creek.

50

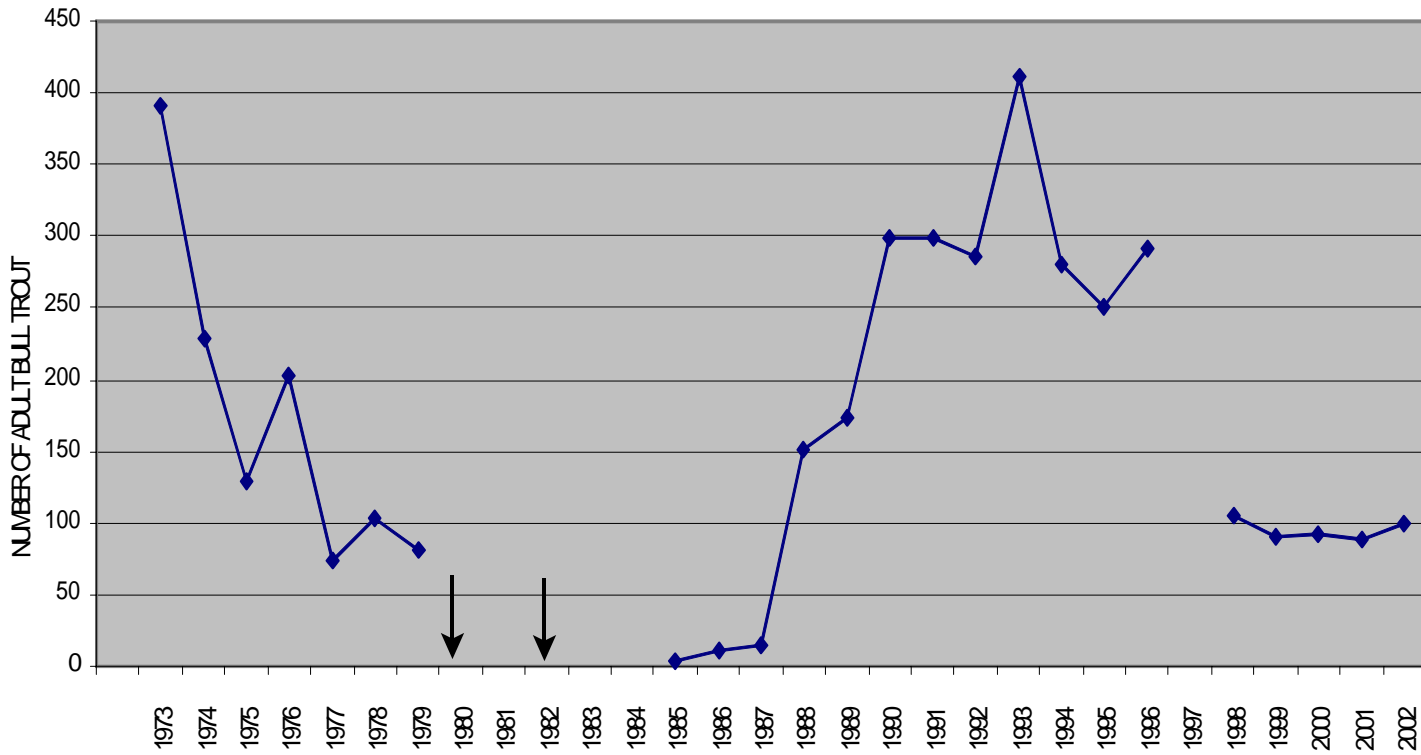


Figure 9. Annual peak count of adult bull trout in the North Fork Skokomish River, Olympic National Park, 1973 to 2002 (walking surveys 1973-1993; snorkeling surveys 1994-2002). The arrows indicate the years when fishing restrictions were first placed on bull trout (1980), followed by all fishing for char being closed (1982) in the North Fork Skokomish River.

In 2001, 20 total redds were observed, 18 in the South Fork Skokomish River and 2 in Church Creek (Ogg and Stutsman 2002). In 2002, 14 redds were observed, 13 in the South Fork Skokomish River and 1 in Church Creek. However, high flows prevented redd surveys toward the end of the spawning season (L. Ogg, pers. comm. 2003a).

Suitable spawning habitat in Church Creek is limited to the lower 0.5 mile and only one to two redds per year have been observed in that reach. It is unlikely that Church Creek could support more than a few redds. In addition to the Church Creek spawning site's proximity to the South Fork Skokomish River, other localized concentrations of redds in the upper South Fork Skokomish River watershed are in close proximity to one another. The Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team members believe this proximity of spawning sites would likely promote free movement among tributaries and sites by spawning adults from one year to the next, resulting in a single local population of fish with common genetic makeup using more than one stream or spawning area for spawning and rearing. The Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, after substantial discussion about bull trout spawning distribution and whether one or more local populations exist in the watershed, designated the Upper South Fork Skokomish River and its colonized tributary Church Creek as a single local population.

Brown Creek watershed has been the focus of a major restoration effort by the Olympic National Forest. These restoration activities include road decommissioning and upgrading, riparian vegetation restoration, upslope vegetation enhancement, off-channel beaded pond enhancement, and instream restoration, such as instream structures and nutrient enhancement (L. Ogg, pers. comm. 2003a). Following these restoration efforts Brown Creek again supports winter and summer steelhead.

Brown Creek has many coldwater springs, over 8.5 kilometers (5 miles) of accessible habitat, and water temperatures are suitable for supporting bull trout spawning and incubation (L. Ogg, pers. comm. 2003c). In 2000, one questionable redd was observed in upper Brown Creek. This redd was smaller in size than other redds observed in the South Fork Skokomish River. Multiple age classes of bull trout have frequently been observed in the creek. The Skokomish core area currently has only two local populations. Rieman and McIntyre (1993) identified

core areas with fewer than five local populations as being at increased risk of extirpation. Therefore, the Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team identified Brown Creek as a potential local population necessary to reduce risk to the core area from random, naturally occurring events that could result in extirpation of local populations. The Brown Creek local population is necessary for recovery of bull trout in the Skokomish core area.

Quinault Core Area. The Quinault core area includes all streams in the Quinault River basin. In 1995, 25 native char were collected for genetic analysis. Allozyme electrophoresis was used to identify species as Dolly Varden or bull trout (Leary and Allendorf 1997). Three fish collected from the upper mainstem Quinault (East Fork) in July 1995 were bull trout. Of the eight fish collected from the upper mainstem Quinault River (East Fork) near Enchanted Valley in September 1995, two were bull trout and six were Dolly Varden. All 14 fish collected from a small tributary in the vicinity of the September mainstem sample were Dolly Varden. Thus, the species are sympatric (co-occur) in the upper mainstem, but only Dolly Varden appear to inhabit the small tributary. There was no evidence of hybridization or introgression (Leary and Allendorf 1997). The two species are not differentiated in the fish survey, and distribution data sets are often referred to collectively as “native char.”

It is likely that the basin supports all life history forms of bull trout including adfluvial, fluvial, anadromous, and potentially, resident forms. Based on the presence of multiple age classes of bull trout, available habitat, and the judgement of the recovery team, the North Fork Quinault River and associated tributaries were identified as a local population and the upper mainstem Quinault River upstream from the confluence with the North Fork Quinault River (East Fork Quinault River) and associated tributaries were identified as a separate local population. Both local populations consist of multiple age classes of bull trout and are above 150 meters (500 feet) elevation where bull trout spawning is most likely to occur (WDOE 2002). More than two local populations likely exist although data are insufficient to define additional local populations at this time. The status of Quinault River bull trout and location of actual spawning sites are unknown.

Snorkel surveys, electrofishing, and hook-and-line sampling have been conducted in the basin. Snorkel surveys were conducted by Olympic National Park and Olympic National Forest biologists during the summer months of 1994 and 1995 in the upper mainstem (East Fork Quinault River), the North Fork Quinault River, and the mainstem from Graves Creek downstream to the North Shore Quinault Bridge (Olympic National Park, *in litt.* 2001). Large adult fish and juveniles were observed in these rivers and in Pyrite, Ignar, O'Neil, and Rustler Creeks (Olympic National Park, *in litt.* 2001).

In the North Fork Quinault River local population, multiple age classes of native char occur upstream to at least river mile 10 (Olympic National Park, *in litt.* 2001). Olympic National Park biologists documented bull trout in Irely Lake in 1993 (S. Brenkman, pers. comm. 2003a). Irely Lake flows into Big Creek, which is connected to the North Fork Quinault River.

In the upper mainstem Quinault River (East Fork) local population multiple age classes of native char have been found upstream and downstream from a potential anadromous barrier located just upstream of the confluence of Graves Creek and upstream to river mile 66 (WDFW 1998; Olympic National Park, *in litt.* 2001). Further surveys are needed to determine whether the fish upstream from the barrier are resident or migratory bull trout.

Although both bull trout and Dolly Varden may occur in Lake Quinault, the extent and distribution of these fish is unknown for most of the tributaries that drain directly into the lake. Downstream from the lake, bull trout have been identified in Cook Creek (D. Zajac U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, pers. comm. 2002). Bull trout presence and distribution in lower river tributaries are unknown, largely due to lack of survey effort, but the migratory life forms likely occur in the mainstem and anadromous reaches of the tributaries.

Cook Creek is a major tributary that enters the lower Quinault River (downstream from the lake) at river mile 17. Three adult bull trout were observed during snorkel surveys in June 2000 (S. Craig, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, pers. comm. 2003) downstream from the electronic weir operated by the Quinault National Fish Hatchery (river mile 5), and a 31-centimeter (12-inch) bull trout was captured at the hatchery in January 2002 (D. Zajac, pers. comm. 2002). A fin

clip sample from this fish was taken for genetic analysis and the fish was confirmed to be a bull trout. It is unknown whether fish documented in Cook Creek were migrating to spawn above or below the weir, or using the creek primarily for foraging.

The Cook Creek watershed (Cook, Elk, Chow Chow, Hathaway, and Skunk Creeks) is characterized by low gradient and numerous wetlands. The watershed contains approximately 21 kilometers (13 miles) of mainstem habitat and 40 kilometers (25 miles) of tributaries. Habitat quality is rated as fair to good with an average of 48 pieces of large woody debris per mile and a pool area of nearly 30 percent (WSCC 2001). Maximum water temperatures at the hatchery generally average 5.5 degrees Celsius (42 degrees Fahrenheit) in winter and 12.2 degrees Celsius (54 degrees Fahrenheit) in the summer. Monthly temperature data over the past 5 years indicate that stream temperatures in Cook Creek are between 6 degrees Celsius and 10 degrees Celsius (42 and 50 degrees Fahrenheit) for at least 8 months of the year. Because of the topography and proximity of the lower reaches of Cook and Chow Chow Creeks to the Quinault River valley and floodplain, it is possible that groundwater infiltration from the main river may be influencing water temperatures measured at the hatchery. The Cook Creek drainage is rainfall dominated, and it is unknown whether the system provides the consistent cold temperatures that are suitable for bull trout spawning and incubation. This watershed apparently provides foraging and overwintering habitat.

Queets Core Area. At the time of listing, we determined that the status of bull trout in the Queets River subpopulations was unknown due to lack of monitoring data that could be rigorously compared. Although the Quinault Indian Nation has a long-term data set of bull trout captured during night seining surveys, data collected since 1991 have not been analyzed. Seining data indicated an incidental catch rate fluctuating between 3.3 and 2.0 char a day from 1977 to 1981 followed by a decreased catch rate that stabilized at around 1.5 char a day from 1982 to 1991 (WDFW 1998). Several anglers interviewed by the Washington Department of Wildlife in 1992 stated that native char abundance in 1992 appeared much lower than in the previous 10 years (WDW 1992). To date, there have been no studies designed to determine trends or abundance of bull trout in the Queets basin. In their most recent bull trout status review, the

Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife (1998) considered the status of Queets River bull trout to be healthy.

In the Queets River, bull trout have been caught in the anadromous zone. Migration to marine waters by Queets River bull trout was verified in 2000 using mineral ratios in otoliths from fish that had also been genetically identified as bull trout (Leary and Allendorf 1997; Volk 2000). The migratory histories of individuals can be inferred through analysis of the strontium to calcium ratio in the otoliths, because the higher strontium content of seawater versus freshwater is reflected in strontium levels in the otoliths. The otolith core strontium:calcium values can also effectively discriminate between the progeny of anadromous and freshwater resident bull trout. The otolith core strontium:calcium values for the Queets River bull trout in the Volk study (2000) suggest that the fish were spawned by anadromous females. Migration through marine waters by Queets River bull trout has been further confirmed during a Hoh River 2003 radio telemetry study (Brenkman and Corbett, *in litt.* 2003a,b).

Results from genetic analysis of 20 samples revealed the presence of bull trout in the Queets River (Leary and Allendorf 1997). Bull trout have been observed in the Queets River up to river mile 46 (Olympic National Park, *in litt.* 2001). Bull trout have also been observed in the Salmon River (G. Ging, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, pers. comm. 2003), Matheny Creek near the confluence with the Queets River (N. Banish, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, pers. comm. 2002), Sams River (Chan, *in litt.* 2001), and Clearwater River downstream of Bull Creek (Peters, *in litt.* 2001).

Based on the professional judgement and experience of members of the recovery team, the Queets River mainstem and tributaries have been designated as mixed use (rearing, foraging, migration, overwintering), and the Queets River and associated tributaries upstream from the confluence with Tshletshy Creek have been designated as a local population (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003a). This local population is above 150 meters (500 feet) elevation and is therefore within the elevation range where bull trout spawning is most likely to occur (WDOE 2002). Spawning has recently been documented in the upper Queets upstream from river mile 45 (Gross, *in litt.* 2002). Bull trout juveniles as

small as 98 millimeters (3.8 inches) have been observed near the mouth of the Queets River (Quinault Indian Nation, *in litt.* 2002).

Hoh Core Area. There is no information on trends or abundance of Hoh River bull trout, and the status of Hoh River bull trout is unknown. Bull trout were historically an important food source for early settlers on the Hoh River (Powell 1999, as cited in McHenry, *in prep.*). Mongillo (1993) described the Hoh as historically containing the largest population of bull trout on the Washington coast, although interviews with anglers and Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife employees suggested that bull trout numbers declined in the period from 1982 to 1992 when the interviews were completed. Results from genetic analyses of fin clips to confirm species identification revealed that only bull trout, and no Dolly Varden, were present in the Hoh River (number of samples analyzed was 73) and South Fork Hoh River (number of samples analyzed was 45) (Brenkman and Meyer 1999).

Bull trout have been found throughout the mainstem Hoh River (river mile 3 to river mile 48) and South Fork Hoh River (river mile 0.2 to river mile 14) (Brenkman and Meyer 1999). No bull trout were detected in 17 of 18 tributaries of the Hoh River surveyed during 1998, despite extensive electrofishing and day and night snorkeling (Brenkman and Meyer 1999). According to the “1944 Fishing Guide To The Northwest,” bull trout were historically found in Tom and Owl Creeks (McLeod 1944).

To date, there have been no surveys for bull trout in the uppermost sections of the Hoh River and Mount Tom, Jackson, and Glacier Creeks due to the lack of access. There have also been very few surveys for bull trout outside Olympic National Park boundaries, although a bull trout was recently observed in Nolan Creek (J. McMillan, *pers. comm.* 2002). Bull trout have been captured in salmon and steelhead fisheries at the mouth of the Hoh River. It is likely that the Hoh River basin supports both resident and migratory forms, including anadromous forms, of bull trout.

In 1998, bull trout were documented spawning in the upper Hoh River basin from October 19 to November 18, although it is likely that additional spawning areas were present but not located (Brenkman and Meyer 1999). Using

the same rationale applied to the Skokomish River and its tributary spawning population for spawning sites in close proximity, bull trout found in the Hoh River upstream from the confluence with the South Fork Hoh River and associated tributaries, including “OGS” Creek, and Cougar Creek, are identified as a local population.

No bull trout spawning was observed in the lower portions of numerous tributaries to the Hoh River during weekly walking surveys from October to December 1998. In 1998, a total of 34 redds was observed from river mile 43 to river mile 48 in the Hoh River, from river mile 10 to river mile 14 in the South Fork Hoh River, in lower “OGS” Creek, and in lower Cougar Creek (Brenkman and Meyer 1999). The co-occurrence of fall spawning bull trout, coho salmon, and Chinook salmon makes it difficult to distinguish which species actually constructed a particular redd. Redds are only identified as bull trout redds if they are occupied by bull trout at the time of the survey. In 1998, no bull trout spawning was observed in the lower portions of Canyon, Jackson, Mount Tom, Snider, Taft, Tower, Twin, and Willoughby Creeks despite weekly surveys from October 13 to December 2 (Brenkman and Meyer 1999). Although redd surveys were conducted in the Hoh River and South Fork Hoh River index areas during 2002, no redds were detected.

Bull trout found in the South Fork Hoh River and associated tributaries are also identified as a local population. In the South Fork Hoh River, Olympic National Park has conducted annual “all species” snorkel surveys since 1991. The surveys are conducted in the fall, although the exact time and extent of the surveys have varied from year to year, which makes comparison of year-to-year data difficult. In 2002, however, 236 bull trout over 30 centimeters (12 inches) in length were observed from river mile 13 to the mouth. This is the highest number of bull trout counted to date during Olympic National Park’s annual all species survey in the upper South Fork Hoh River (Brenkman, *in litt.* 2003a). Using data provided in a summary of the all species snorkel surveys, a range of bull trout densities for the survey area can be described. Densities range from a low of 1 fish per mile in 2001 to a high of 18 fish per mile in 2002.

Both local populations are above 150 meters (500 feet) elevation and therefore within elevations where bull trout spawning is most likely to occur

(WDOE 2002). Further surveys and genetic analyses are needed to confirm the accuracy of this designation.

Elwha Core Area. The Elwha core area includes the entire mainstem river, all tributaries, Lake Mills, Lake Aldwell, and the estuary of the river (Figure 7). The Elwha and Glines Canyon Dams and their associated reservoirs fragment the core area and have been identified as the cause of elevated stream temperatures in both the middle and lower rivers. The Elwha River Ecosystem and Fisheries Restoration Act of 1992 (Public Law 102–495) authorizes the removal of the Elwha and Glines Canyon Dams to fully restore the Elwha River ecosystem and native anadromous fisheries. With dam removal and fisheries restoration, connectivity for the upper, middle, and lower sections of the Elwha River should also be restored, and the core area will no longer be fragmented by artificial barriers.

There is no information on the life history forms present in the basin although it is likely that anadromous, fluvial, adfluvial, and resident bull trout exist. Bull trout have been caught in Lake Mills, Lake Aldwell, in the river between the reservoirs, below Elwha Dam, and in the river upstream to river mile 44 (Brenkman and Meyer, *in litt.* 2001). Genetic analyses of 58 fin clips confirms that native char in the Elwha are bull trout (Young, *in litt.* 2001).

Bull trout have been observed each year in the Lower Elwha River and the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife Chinook salmon rearing channel (WDFW 1998). Hatchery personnel at the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife Elwha River Hatchery report having seen 5 to 10 bull trout each year, mainly from 1986 to 1996 (G. Travers, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, pers. comm. 2002). These fish averaged 250 to 310 millimeters (10 to 12 inches) and were observed mainly in the winter during high-water periods when they showed up at the intake screens while the hatchery was running on river water. In 2001, the Lower Elwha Tribe observed four bull trout during August snorkel surveys (M. McHenry, Lower S’Klallam Tribe, pers. comm. 2002b) and an angler captured a 430-millimeter (17-inch) bull trout in September and a 510-millimeter (20-inch) bull trout in December (S. Brenkman, pers. comm. 2002a). In 2002, during August through October snorkel surveys, the Lower Elwha Tribe observed seven adult or subadult bull trout in the Lower Elwha River

below the Elwha Dam; in the 2003 snorkel survey 31 bull trout ranging in size from 250 to 620 millimeters were observed below the Elwha Dam (G. Pess, NOAA Fisheries, pers. comm. 2003). One to two bull trout mortalities have been observed annually in the lower Elwha River where the elevated temperature regime is likely contributing to increased disease and mortality episodes for salmonids (M. McHenry, pers. comm. 2002a.). Anglers in this reach have observed large bull trout attacking hooked rainbow trout (M. McHenry, pers. comm. 2003). It is unknown whether these bull trout in the Elwha River below Elwha Dam migrated from another core area (*i.e.*, the Dungeness), originated from parents that spawned in this lower river, or originated from parents that spawned in the more suitable, pristine habitat within Olympic National Park and then were able to move downstream past the two dams.

Bull trout tend to occur in moderately low numbers between the two dams. Both juvenile and adult bull trout have been captured in the middle Elwha and Lake Aldwell below Glines Canyon Dam (Hiss and Wunderlich 1994; Chan, *in litt.* 2001). Once the dams are removed, the Elwha River below Glines Canyon Dam will likely provide important foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat for bull trout in the Elwha core area.

Based on professional judgement, knowledge of the presence of fish in a number of drainages, and the availability of suitable habitat, the recovery team designated the Elwha River and accessible tributaries upstream from Glines Canyon Dam as a single local population (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003a). In this system multiple age classes of bull trout have been observed throughout the basin, including in Boulder, Cat, Prescott, Stony, Hayes, Godkin, Buckinghorse, and Delabarre Creeks (Reisenbichler 1999; Brenkman and Meyer, *in litt.* 2001). Due to the steep terrain, many of these tributaries have limited accessible habitat. All of this local population is above 150 meters (500 feet) elevation and therefore within elevations where bull trout spawning is most likely to occur (WDOE 2002). Although spawning has not been detected in the Elwha core area, there has been little survey effort. Access to most of the core area is very difficult, and multiple age classes of bull trout have been observed above the Glines Canyon Dam. It is likely that more than one local population exists in the Elwha core area, and future surveys may indicate departures from this current

single local population. There is no information on trends or abundance of Elwha River bull trout, and the status of Elwha River bull trout is unknown.

The Elwha core area currently has only one identified local population. Rieman and McIntyre (1993) identified core areas with fewer than five local populations as being at increased risk of extirpation. Based on the professional judgement and experience of members of the recovery team, and the likelihood of spawning when the Elwha and Glines Canyon Dams are removed, the Little River has been identified as a potential local population necessary for recovery in the Elwha core area (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003a). The Little River has over 11 kilometers (7 miles) of accessible habitat and the habitat, including temperature conditions in the river, are suitable for bull trout spawning and juvenile rearing based on temperature data collected in 1996 by the Lower Elwha S'Klallam Tribe (McHenry, *in litt.* 2003). The temperature profile is similar to other systems where very cold groundwater is the major factor influencing stream temperatures in late summer, with very little diurnal variation (McHenry, *in litt.* 2003). The Tribe also has records of an important salmon camp historically occurring on the Little River. Morrill and McHenry (1995) also reported the presence of bull trout in this river.

Dungeness Core Area. Bull trout have been observed throughout the Dungeness River upstream to an impassable barrier at river mile 19 and in the Gray Wolf River (Peters, *in litt.* 1997). Genetic analyses of 50 samples from fish collected in the upper Dungeness River upstream from the impassable barrier at river mile 24 have identified resident Dolly Varden (Young, *in litt.* 2001), and bull trout have been identified from 25 samples collected in the Dungeness River downstream from the barrier (Spruell and Maxwell 2002). It is unknown if bull trout are present upstream from the anadromous barriers in the Gray Wolf River at the confluence with Cameron and Grand Creeks.

The core area includes spawning, rearing, foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat. Multiple age classes of char have been observed in the Dungeness mainstem, and it is likely that the core area supports fluvial and anadromous forms of bull trout (Peters, *in litt.* 1997; Chan, *in litt.* 2001). Population abundance has not been monitored in the mainstem, and few surveys have been conducted in the tributaries.

The middle Dungeness River upstream from the confluence with and including Canyon Creek and associated tributaries, including Gold, and Canyon Creeks, upstream to the impassable barrier at river mile 19, has been identified as a local population. Although spawning has not been detected in this local population (little survey effort has been made), multiple age classes have been documented (Peters, *in litt.* 1997; Chan, *in litt.* 2001), and there is suitable spawning and rearing habitat within the mainstem and tributaries to support a local population.

Based on the judgement and experience of biologists on the recovery team, documentation of redds, and the availability of suitable habitat, the Gray Wolf River has also been identified as a local population. Bull trout redds were recently documented in the Gray Wolf River between river mile 2 and river mile 4 (R. Cooper, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, pers. comm. 2002).

Both the Middle Dungeness and Gray Wolf local population are above 150 meters (500 feet) elevation and within elevational limits where bull trout spawning is most likely to occur on the west side of the Cascade Mountains (including the Olympic Mountains) in Washington (WDOE 2002). Future surveys may indicate changes in identification of local populations.

Summary of Status of Bull Trout and Importance of Core Areas in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Olympic National Park forms a hub of pristine habitat for bull trout in this management unit. However, the Olympic Peninsula probably presents a more significant challenge for determining status, abundance, distribution, and location of spawning sites than other areas throughout the range of bull trout due to the high number of turbid glacial rivers, high rain fall and resulting high flows, and access problems. Access is limited by steep terrain combined with extensive roadless wilderness areas. While Olympic National Park provides great benefits to all fish by protecting large watersheds, and specifically to bull trout by protecting much of the assumed spawning habitat, it also hinders access needed to conduct monitoring, especially of spawning trends and population abundance.

Available data on distribution or abundance of bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit are often limited in scope and have been collected by

a variety of methods. Sources of data include historical reports, incidental bull trout counts obtained during other fish surveys, smolt and adult trap counts, creel survey data, redd count data, personal observations by biologists, radio telemetry, and adult counts. It is likely that spawner distribution and the number of local populations are underestimated and that many spawning and rearing areas have not been located and thus have been omitted. The recovery team has identified obtaining information on bull trout distribution, abundance, and spawning sites as a high priority action necessary for recovery and for monitoring and evaluating the status of bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula.

The six identified core areas all play a critical role in the recovery of bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Each core area is vital to maintaining the overall distribution of bull trout within the management unit. The Skokomish core area is the only core area on the eastern portion of the Olympic Peninsula and the only core area draining into Hood Canal. It has more abundance data than any other core area in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Due to low abundance (fewer than 200 adult spawners) and fragmentation of habitat, it is likely the most depressed core area in the management unit. The Dungeness and Elwha core areas are the only core areas connected to the Strait of Juan de Fuca. Little is known about the spawning abundance or distribution in either core area, although it is believed that most of the spawning and rearing habitat for the Elwha core area is located within Olympic National Park. On the coast the Queets, Quinault, and Hoh River core areas drain into the Pacific Ocean. The highest number of redds in these core areas has been observed in the Hoh River core area. The number of redds (34 in 1998) and the estimated number of adult fish spawning on those redds are fewer than what is believed to be necessary to reduce the risk from genetic inbreeding for the local populations and from genetic drift (the random change in the frequency of occurrence of a particular gene in a population) for the core area. The recovery team believes that there are additional spawning sites that have not yet been located. In the Queets core area, only a small number of redds have been located and none have been located in the Quinault River. Due to the lack of information on bull trout abundance and trends in all core areas other than the Skokomish core area, status is unknown for the Dungeness, Elwha, Hoh, Queets, and Quinault River core areas.

Important Marine, Estuarine, and Coastal River Habitat for Bull Trout. Marine waters, including coastal rivers, estuaries, and nearshore waters, provide bull trout access to a productive forage base and to overwintering areas protected from extreme flow events. Many coastal tributaries seasonally occupied by bull trout are not believed to support spawning (Brenkman and Corbett, *in litt.* 2003a,b; Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003a). These waters have been identified by the recovery teams as important foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat for bull trout from core areas in the Olympic Peninsula. The recovery team also identified comprehensive surveys of additional river systems with potential bull trout foraging and overwintering habitat as an important research need.

The “marine” foraging, migration, and associated overwintering habitats are important to bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula for maintaining diversity of life history forms and for providing access to productive forage areas. Based on the professional judgement and experience of members of the recovery team, all marine and estuarine waters, and independent tributaries with documented use by bull trout outside of core areas, provide habitat necessary for foraging, migration, and overwintering by core area populations on the Olympic Peninsula (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003c).

Within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, there is confirmation of anadromous bull trout using nearshore marine waters, estuaries, or lower reaches of coastal rivers as migratory corridors and to forage and overwinter. Migration to marine waters by Queets River bull trout was first verified using otolith strontium from fish that had also been genetically identified as bull trout (Leary and Allendorf 1997; Volk 2000). In addition, the otolith core strontium:calcium values for the Queets River bull trout in the Volk (2000) study suggest that the fish were spawned by anadromous females.

In an ongoing study in Olympic National Park to determine life history, movement patterns, and anadromy in Hoh River bull trout, biologists have analyzed stomach samples from bull trout incidentally taken in lower river gill-net fisheries targeting salmon. Preliminary results indicate that prey items found in bull trout stomachs from the lower Hoh River primarily consisted of surf smelt, a marine species (S. Brenkman, pers. comm. 2003b). In the same Hoh River

study, seasonal movements of bull trout implanted with radio transmitters revealed that at the onset of winter the majority of tagged fish moved from upper portions of the Hoh River into marine waters beyond the tidally influenced river mouth (S. Brenkman, pers. comm. 2003b; Brenkman and Corbett, *in litt.* 2003a,b; Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2002). During aerial tracking along the Pacific Coast, a number of radio tagged bull trout were documented inhabiting lower portions of Cedar, Steamboat, Kalaloch Creeks, two unnamed coastal independent tributaries, and the Raft and Queets Rivers (Brenkman and Corbett, *in litt.* 2003b). The majority of tagged bull trout that moved into marine waters from the Hoh River during the winter were not located during aerial surveys in the winter and spring. The ability to locate these fish was restricted by the limited scope and frequency of flights and the inability of the radio tagged fish to be detected while in saltwater or in fresh water outside the range of the tracking equipment.

It is unclear to what degree this marine foraging behavior actually influences population structuring within the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment. Some level of mixing or interaction within marine waters apparently occurs among anadromous individuals from various core areas. A bull trout acoustic telemetry project in the Snohomish River estuary in Puget Sound recently confirmed the presence in the estuary of bull trout from other basins (F.Goetz, pers. comm. 2002b). Bull trout from the Hoh River basin moved south through marine waters and into the lower portions of the Quinault and Queets Rivers during the winter and spring. However, as in Puget Sound, there is currently insufficient information to understand the full extent of core area mixing within and through marine waters. Historically, anadromy could have played a role in establishing the species' distribution within the Olympic Peninsula, Puget Sound, and even within the Columbia River. Anadromy may also function as an important means for natural refounding[†] of extirpated populations.

Coastal rivers and most independent tributaries outside of bull trout core areas are unlikely to support spawning and rearing populations due to their low elevation and lack of suitable water temperatures for these life stages. However, to locate seasonally abundant prey species in these creeks and rivers, bull trout can use marine waters as a migratory corridor to move from their core area into at least the downstream portion of another river or creek basin. Because bull trout

forage on salmon fry and eggs, it is believed by the recovery team that bull trout will use portions of these rivers that overlap salmon rearing (Phinney and Bucknell 1975). Bull trout may also use independent tributary mouths as freshwater “stepping stones” while migrating through marine waters and as refugia from high flows in their natal rivers during winter. Coastal and marine tributaries to Grays Harbor, the Pacific Ocean, and the Strait of Juan de Fuca where bull trout adults and subadults have been observed, but where habitat is likely unsuitable for spawning, include Goodman, Joe, Morse, Ennis, and Siebert Creeks; and the Raft, Moclips, Humptulips, Wishkah, and Copalis Rivers.

Although bull trout use of additional creek and river drainages that discharge directly into Grays Harbor, the Pacific Ocean, Hood Canal, or Strait of Juan de Fuca has not been documented, bull trout are difficult to survey (Peterson *et al.* 2002) and lack of documentation may be the result of lack of targeted bull trout survey effort. For example, bull trout had not been documented in Grays Harbor for more than 20 years (since 1981) (Simenstad and Eggers 1981). However, eight bull trout were captured during beach seining surveys conducted by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers in Grays Harbor from March to June 2002 (Jeanes, *et al.* 2003). These surveys targeted bull trout rather than other salmonids.

On the coast, bull trout have been observed as far north as Goodman Creek (B. Freymond, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, pers. comm. 2003) and as far south as Forks Creek, a tributary to the Willapa River (M. Ackley, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, pers. comm. 2002). It is unknown if bull trout from Olympia Peninsula populations migrate as far east as Puget Sound and to what extent they may migrate up the coast of Vancouver Island and British Columbia.

Hood Canal and Independent Tributaries: Foraging, Migration, Overwintering Habitat. Hood Canal is relatively narrow glacier-carved fjord 98 kilometers (61 miles) long that forms the eastern portion of the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Early accounts of the fisheries in Hood Canal describe a great abundance of salmon and steelhead in the lower part of the canal (Hood Canal Technical Workgroup 1995). Currently, the much reduced wild salmon runs are augmented by nine State, Federal, and Tribal hatcheries, and at

least a dozen small privately owned and operated salmon production facilities throughout the Hood Canal area.

As recently as the 1980's, bull trout were observed during snorkeling surveys in reaches accessible to salmon in tributaries to Hood Canal, including the Quilcene, Dosewallips, Duckabush, and Hamma Hamma Rivers (Meyer, *in litt.* 2001; P. Hilgert, R2 Consulting, pers. comm. 2000). More recent surveys by Olympic National Park in some of these rivers have not detected bull trout. Historically bull trout were observed immediately downstream of the Duckabush Fish Hatchery (U.S. Fisheries and Fish Commission, *in litt.* 1913) and in the lower reaches of the Hamma Hamma River (McLeod 1944).

The only known population of bull trout in Hood Canal is located in the Skokomish River. This river basin has been identified in this plan as a core area that is depressed and at risk of extirpation due to low numbers and fragmentation. Bull trout have been observed in the lower Skokomish River and the estuary of the Skokomish River, although the current extent of the reduced population's use of Hood Canal is unknown (Haw and Buckley, *in litt.* 1973). The Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team identified Hood Canal as important foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat for bull trout that would likely be used as the Skokomish core area increases in abundance.

Strait of Juan de Fuca and Independent Tributaries: Foraging, Migration, and Overwintering Habitat. The Strait Juan de Fuca is also a glacial fjord. It connects Puget Sound and Hood Canal to the Pacific Ocean and is located in the northern region of the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. There are a number of small independent drainages to the strait, some of which originate in Olympic National Park. Bull trout use of these tributaries is poorly understood. Bull trout have been documented in the Strait of Juan de Fuca drainages of Bell, Siebert, Morse, and Ennis Creeks (Mongillo 1993; WDFW 1998; Freudenthal, *in litt.* 2001a,b; R. Cooper, pers. comm. 2003). Morse Creek may have suitable habitat to support a small population of bull trout. Based on current or historical habitat conditions, and the experience and professional judgement of members of the recovery team, most of these rivers and streams located between Bell and Ennis Creeks on the Strait of Juan de Fuca are not believed to support spawning populations, but do provide important foraging and

overwintering opportunities for bull trout (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003c). Numerous forage fish (*e.g.*, herring, surf smelt) spawning sites are found throughout the Strait of Juan de Fuca (WDFW 2000; Shaffer *et al.* 2003). Thus, the Strait of Juan de Fuca provides essential and biologically important foraging and migration habitats for bull trout.

Pacific Ocean and Independent Coastal Tributaries: Foraging, Migration, and Overwintering Habitat. The Pacific Ocean forms the western boundary of the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Bull trout have been documented in the coastal drainages of Cedar, Steamboat, Mosquito, Kalaloch, Goodman, and Joe Creeks and the Raft, Moclips and Copalis Rivers (McLeod 1944; Mongillo 1993; WDFW 1998; Freymond, *in litt.* 2001; B. Freymond, pers. comm. 2003; S. Potter, Quinault Indian Nation, pers. comm. 2003; S. Brenkman, pers. comm. 2003b). Based on current and historical habitat conditions, and the experience and professional judgement of members of the recovery team, rivers and streams with documented use by bull trout located between Goodman Creek and Grays Harbor are not believed to support spawning populations, but are believed to provide important foraging and overwintering opportunities for bull trout (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003c).

Lower Chehalis River/Grays Harbor and Independent Tributaries: Foraging, Migration, and Overwintering Habitat. The Chehalis River system is a large basin that drains portions of the Olympic Mountains, the Cascade Mountains, the Black Hills, and the Willapa Hills before entering the Pacific Ocean. It forms much of the southern boundary of the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. The drainage is almost entirely on State, U.S. Forest Service, or private lands. The mouth of the Chehalis River is located at Grays Harbor.

Bull trout have been historically, or are currently, documented in tributaries west of, and including, the Satsop River in the Chehalis system (Mongillo 1993). Bull trout have been caught by steelhead anglers in the Wynoochee (Keizer 1990; G. Deschamps, Chehalis Tribe, pers. comm. 1997; T. Hooper, NOAA Fisheries, pers. comm. 2004;), West Fork Satsop, and Canyon Rivers (Webster, *in litt.* 2001). Historical observations of bull trout were reported in the Humptulips River during Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife creel checks in 1958 and 1973 (Burley, *in litt.* 1997). Bull trout have recently

been documented in systems that enter into Grays Harbor, such as the Wishkah and Humptulips Rivers (Dachtler, *in litt.* 2001; Ereth, *in litt.* 2002). Bull trout were reported in Grays Harbor surveys targeting other salmonids from 1966 through 1981 (Jeanes *et al.* 2003), but no additional observations of bull trout were reported from 1981 to 2001. In 2002, beach seine surveys that targeted bull trout located the species in Grays Harbor (Jeanes *et al.* 2003). Bull trout have been documented in the Chehalis River from its mouth upstream to Garrard Creek (Brix 1974; Keizer 1990; Jeanes *et al.* 2003;). In April 2003, a single bull trout was captured in the lower Chehalis River and surgically implanted with a sonic tag. Preliminary data indicated that this fish left the Chehalis River system shortly after it was tagged and did not return to the basin (Jeanes, *in litt.* 2003). It is not understood how bull trout in these rivers and the harbor interact or relate either to one another or to bull trout in the coastal core areas.

Based on the professional judgement and experience of members of the recovery team, Grays Harbor, the Chehalis River upstream to and including the Satsop River, and portions of the Wishkah, Wynoochee, and Humptulips Rivers used by salmon and steelhead, have been identified as either current or suspected bull trout foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat important for bull trout recovery in the Olympic Peninsula (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003b,c). The Satsop River has also been identified as a research need area to determine the feasibility of reestablishing bull trout in the West Fork Satsop River. There are no records of bull trout use in the Hoquiam River, and bull trout use of the Hoquiam River has been identified as a research need.

Marine and Estuarine use by Dolly Varden. Dolly Varden are native char closely related to bull trout. A brief review of literature on marine use by Dolly Varden may help determine bull trout timing and extent of use of marine waters in the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment. Dolly Varden appear to have slightly colder water temperature requirements than bull trout, which may partially explain their Washington residency in upper watersheds upstream from anadromous barriers rather than in marine waters (Haas 2001). It is important to note that none of the research discussed in this section is based on Dolly Varden research in Washington.

Brackish water zones, including lagoons and coves, clearly provided habitat for Dolly Varden growth and rearing in Beaufort Sea coastal waters (off Alaska; Underwood *et al.* 1996). Although foraging is considered an important factor in Dolly Varden use of these waters, the constant search for thermal or salinity optima may result in apparently random movements by Dolly Varden and could obscure causal relationships. Thorpe's (1994) review of salmonid estuarine use found that anadromous Dolly Varden stay close to the shoreline. He found little evidence in the literature that the estuary was used for physiological adjustment or as a refuge from predation but did find clear evidence of a trophic advantage to estuarine residency (abundant prey). Aitkin (1998) reviewed the estuarine habitat of anadromous salmonids and found that Dolly Varden pass through estuaries while migrating and inhabit coastal waters.

Studies in Alaska have shown that Dolly Varden return to natal streams to spawn, but stocks are mixed at sea and in overwintering areas (DeCicco 1992). In a study in southeast Alaska to determine the migratory habits of anadromous Dolly Varden, Armstrong (1965) found that marked fish were found in 25 different stream systems as far as 116 kilometers (72 miles) from their natal stream. Some fish became widely distributed in a short period of time (3 to 10 days). They spent an average of 116 days in marine waters. About 40 percent of the marked fish appeared to stray or migrate to other streams during the winter. DeCicco (1992) showed that movements of anadromous Dolly Varden can be much greater than previously known (as far as 1,560 kilometers [969 miles] within 60 days), are not always coastal in nature, and suggest stocks may move over a wide geographic area, between fresh waters of Alaska and the Soviet Union.

REASONS FOR DECLINE

Bull trout distribution, abundance, and habitat quality have declined rangewide (see 63 FR 31647, 63 FR 31647, 64 FR 58910 and references therein). Within the coterminous United States, these declines have resulted from the combined effects of habitat degradation and fragmentation, blockage of migratory corridors, poor water quality, angler harvest and associated hooking mortality[†], incidental mortality associated with fisheries for other species, poaching, entrainment (the process by which aquatic organisms are pulled through diversion

channels and dams), and introduced nonnative species. Land and water management activities that depress bull trout populations and degrade habitat include forest management practices, livestock grazing, agriculture, agricultural diversions, road construction and maintenance, mining, and urban and rural development. Where applicable, the reasons for decline will be discussed in detail for each core area and important foraging, migration, and overwintering area. These reasons for decline will be presented according to the five factors identified under the Endangered Species Act, as described below.

The Skokomish watershed provides an example of the threats to bull trout that can occur from the interaction of multiple past and present activities. The degraded condition of the stream corridors, especially conditions related to road networks, timber harvest, diking, and conversion of floodplains into agricultural land and residential development, have resulted in even greater flood damage and the reduced ability of the Skokomish River to recover natural fluvial function. After each flood event, increasingly severe modifications have been made to protect roads, residences, and agricultural land in the floodplain (USDA 1995b), again resulting in greater flood damage and reduced ability to recover natural fluvial function.

In determining whether to list, reclassify, or delist a taxon under the Endangered Species Act, we consider the effects of five different factors that may have negative impacts on the species, potentially leading to its decline. Those five factors are (from section 4(a) of the Act):

- (A) the present or threatened destruction, modification, or curtailment of its habitat or range;
- (B) overutilization for commercial, recreational, scientific, or educational purposes;
- (C) disease or predation;
- (D) the inadequacy of existing regulatory mechanisms;
- (E) other natural or manmade factors affecting its continued existence.

Dams (Factor A)

Overview. Ensuring the persistence of the species requires restoring and maintaining connectivity among remaining populations of bull trout (Rieman and

McIntyre 1993). Migration and spawning among populations increases genetic variability and strengthens population viability (Rieman and McIntyre 1993). Barriers caused by human activities limit population interactions and may eliminate migratory life history forms of bull trout. Bull trout migrating downstream of dams without upstream fish passage are unable to contribute to the bull trout population upstream. Systems with multiple impassable dams can result in significant loss. Long-term effects resulting from dams in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit include reduced native anadromous fish populations, associated loss of marine-derived nutrients, and reduced levels or loss of opportunity for genetic exchange within the core areas. The long-term effects of the dams on bull trout habitat include inundation of spawning and rearing habitat; loss of gravel recruitment, nutrients, and large instream woody debris; and increased stream temperatures due to low flows.

Another impact related to dams is injury and mortality of bull trout passing downstream over the spillway[†] or through power tunnels and turbines. The hydroelectric projects on the North Fork Skokomish and Elwha Rivers were constructed without any provisions for safe fish passage. Significant injury and mortality can occur during spillway passage if bull trout strike the retaining walls, projections on the spillway, or rocks below the spillway. Bull trout mortality may result during passage through the power tunnel and turbines of a single hydroelectric facility. Injury and mortality rates can vary significantly due to both fish size and the operational range of the Francis turbines in these facilities (Wunderlich and Dilley 1985; Bell 1991a,b). In an analysis of turbine-related mortalities, downstream passage mortality must be extrapolated to account for the fact that the Elwha and North Fork Skokomish Rivers each have two hydroelectric facilities.

Skokomish Core Area. The construction of Cushman Dams 1 (Lake Cushman) and 2 (Lake Kokanee), without fish passage, has had long-term impacts on water quality and connectivity in the Skokomish core area. The Cushman Dams are operated by Tacoma Power. The river is diverted through a tunnel at Lower Cushman Dam to supply a power plant in Potlatch on Hood Canal (Phinney and Bucknell 1975). The two dams prevent migration between the Upper North Fork Skokomish River and the lower North Fork Skokomish

River, mainstem Skokomish River, and Hood Canal and form a significant barrier to connectivity in the Skokomish core area.

Water levels in Lake Cushman can fluctuate up to 21 meters (69 feet), with peak levels occurring during summer and minimum levels during winter. The magnitude of these fluctuations results in periodic inundation of 12 hectares (30 acres) of land surrounding the inlet to the reservoir, resulting in high water temperatures in the shallow waters of the inlet during the summer months (Brenkman 1998). Currently, the reservoir inundates 17.2 kilometers (10.7 miles) of river, including areas of the original Lake Cushman (Brenkman 1998).

As part of the operation of this complex from 1930 to 1988, the entire flow of the North Fork Skokomish River downstream of Cushman Dam 2 was diverted to a power station near Potlatch, Washington. Since 1988, 0.85 cubic meters per second (30 cubic feet per second) of water has been released into the river, an amount equal to 4 percent of the river's average natural flow (American Rivers 1996). The flow of the North Fork Skokomish River is largely bypassed to Hood Canal and does not contribute to the mainstem Skokomish River and Skokomish estuary. Loss of flow in the North Fork Skokomish River has resulted in reduced sediment transport capacity, loss of fish spawning and rearing habitat, reduced channel capacity, and more frequent flooding (USDA 1995b).

Reduced flows have also significantly altered sediment size and sedimentation patterns in the delta, which has resulted in increased erosion at the outer edge of the delta and increased sediment deposition[†] at the inner edge. These impacts to the intertidal zone have contributed to reduced biological productivity of the estuary and reduced sizes of eelgrass (*Zostera marina*) beds at the mouth of the Skokomish River. Herring, an important prey species for bull trout (Kraemer 1994), rely on eelgrass beds for spawning habitat (O'Toole *et al.* 2000). Eelgrass beds also provide important habitat for juvenile salmonids and other bull trout prey species. Loss of eelgrass beds reduces forage opportunities for bull trout in the Skokomish core area.

Elwha Core Area. Elwha and Glines Canyon Dams have had, and continue to have, long-term impacts on fisheries, water quality, and connectivity in the Elwha core area. Significant impacts to migratory bull trout in the Elwha

River began with the construction of the Elwha Dam in 1913 at river mile 5. This dam blocked all upstream migration and fragmented the Elwha into two isolated sections. The construction of Glines Canyon Dam in 1926 resulted in further fragmentation and isolation of the Elwha bull trout population. The upper Elwha River population is in Lake Mills, the mainstem Elwha River and tributaries upstream from Glines Canyon Dam, and the middle Elwha River population is in Lake Aldwell and its tributaries between Glines Canyon and Elwha Dams.

In the mainstem Elwha River downstream from the Elwha Dam suitable spawning habitat is extremely limited due to lack of spawning gravel recruitment, the predominance of large substrate (large cobbles and boulders), and high water temperatures. Recruitment of spawning gravels has been impeded by the two dams for nearly 100 years. Water temperatures are elevated by solar warming of the two reservoirs (McHenry 2002). It is unlikely that significant or viable bull trout spawning occurs in this lower part of the river, and the anadromous life history form in the Elwha core area has largely been eliminated by construction of the two dams. Natural production of salmon is now limited to just a few areas in the lower river, and hatchery supplementation is necessary to maintain production of summer/fall Chinook salmon, fall coho salmon, and winter steelhead. It is unknown whether bull trout observed downstream from Elwha Dam originate from the Elwha River upstream from the dams or migrate from an adjacent basin, such as the Dungeness River.

Bull trout have been reported to occur in low numbers between the two dams, in Lake Mills, and in three tributaries (Griff and Hughes Creeks and Little River) within this reach (Hiss and Wunderlich 1994; Brenkman and Meyer, *in litt.* 2001). Habitat between the dams is impacted by the interception and trapping of nutrients, gravels, and large woody debris by Lake Mills, and solar warming that occurs because of the longer retention time and the large surface area of the reservoir. The habitat upstream of Lake Mills is entirely within Olympic National Park and exhibits good bull trout habitat conditions. Despite insufficient information on the abundance and status of bull trout upstream from the dams, the available information and suitable habitat conditions indicates much better conditions for bull trout upstream from Lake Mills than for bull trout in the lower river.

The dams on the Elwha have also impacted the estuary, beach morphology, and eelgrass beds. The dams have prevented recruitment of fluvially transported sediment, and at least 366 meters (1,200 feet) of shoreline has been eroded during the period from 1939 to 1994 (WSSC 2000a).

Forest Management Practices (Factor A)

Overview. Although timber harvest continues throughout the Olympic Peninsula, it is no longer the major economic base in this region. Past forest management practices have left long-term impacts, and stream systems continue to be impacted from these practices even today.

The Olympic Peninsula has a long history of timber harvest, beginning in the mid-1880's. Much of the lowlands initially harvested for timber have been subsequently cleared for agriculture and residential development. The mainstem reaches of all core areas, except the Queets and Elwha core areas (which are almost entirely within the boundaries of Olympic National Park), have been impacted by past timber harvest (McHenry *et al.* 1998). In the Queets core area tributaries and rivers outside of the national park boundaries (*i.e.*, Clearwater and Salmon Rivers, Matheny Creek) have been impacted by timber harvest.

Early riparian and stream clearing and the construction of splash dams[†] to facilitate water transport of logs were common practices in western Washington streams (Sedell *et al.* 1991). Repeated splash damming resulted in major long-term damage to fish habitat as the practice caused severe scouring[†] of stream channels, often down to bedrock (Murphy 1995). In tributaries too small for splash dams, trees were typically yarded downstream, degrading stream channels and banks in the process. Railroad systems were also constructed for transporting timber to mills in many watersheds. Although these forest management practices improved by the 1950's, clear-cutting to the streambanks remained a common practice until the 1980's. In the 1970's, forest practice rules began to require the removal of logging debris from streams after timber harvest (Murphy 1995); however, this resulted in complete clearing of large woody debris from many streams. Until recently, State forest practices allowed timber harvest to occur within 7.6 meters (25 feet) of salmon streams; these minimum widths were often insufficient to fully protect riparian ecosystems (USDI *et al.* 1996a).

The current impacts of timber harvest on bull trout habitat have likely been reduced with implementation of new Washington State Forest Practices Rules on private lands (Washington Forest Practices Board 2001) and implementation of the Northwest Forest Plan Aquatic Conservation Strategy (USDA and USDI 1994 a,b; see “Ongoing Conservation Measures” in this document) on public lands. However, the Washington State Forest Practices Rules are complex and have not been implemented long enough for monitoring or evaluation to determine the amount of conservation benefits that will be derived from protecting and improving aquatic habitat. The Northwest Forest Plan Aquatic Conservation Strategy is currently undergoing review and may be revised in the future.

Timber harvest and associated activities, such as road construction and skidding[†], can increase sediment delivery to streams, clogging substrate interstices and decreasing stream channel stability and formation (effects from forest road networks are discussed in the “Transportation Networks” section under “Reasons for Decline”). Harvest in riparian areas decreases woody debris recruitment and negatively affects the stream’s response to runoff patterns. Stream temperatures rise with decreases in the forest canopy[†] and riparian zone shading. Runoff timing and magnitude can also change, delivering more water to streams in a shorter period, which causes increased stream energy and scour and reduces base flows during summer months.

Forestry practices on the Olympic Peninsula have included instream salvage, stream cleaning, and the conversion of old-growth coniferous riparian forests to young stands of deciduous species. These practices have altered both the abundance and recruitment of large woody debris, especially decay-resistant conifers, such as western red cedar (*Thuja plicata*), in Olympic Peninsula streams. The large woody debris in many streams is now dominated by smaller diameter alder (*Alnus* spp.) that tends to decay quickly and exert less influence on channel forming processes. Such wood is often too small to influence river channel hydraulics, especially the formation of pools in large mainstem rivers. Future effects of this lack of large wood recruitment will be evident as recruitment of old-growth wood is lost (McHenry, in prep.). The rapid loss of large wood from streams may also be related to increased flooding and sediment in channels modified by intense logging (McHenry *et al.* 1998).

Clear-cutting large blocks of timber has been the prevalent logging method. Where this occurs on steep slopes it often results in slope instability, mass wasting[†] (landslides), high silt loads, and reduced water quality. In addition, studies have shown that large trees in temperate coastal rainforests collect moisture from fog, and this collection of moisture may contribute an estimated 35 percent of the annual precipitation (Quinault Indian Nation and USDA 1999).

Recreational activities (*e.g.*, camping, trail use, off-road vehicle use) in forested areas have often caused significant localized impacts. These are typically associated with riparian vegetation removal and degradation, sedimentation, and degradation of streambanks and channels. Some of these impacts have facilitated bull trout access to staging and spawning areas, but have also resulted in increased illegal harvest.

Skokomish Core Area. The 1995 Skokomish Watershed Analysis (USDA 1995b) identified the South Fork Skokomish River watershed as highly erosive due to extensive logging and high road densities. Harvest management activity throughout the South Fork Skokomish River watershed has been extensive, with 21,246 hectares (52,500 acres) harvested since 1915 and 756 kilometers (470 miles) of new road construction. As of 1995, approximately 60 percent of the watershed had been harvested. The remaining 40 percent of the watershed was either old-growth forest or alpine vegetation (USDA 1995b).

Most timber harvest in the Skokomish watershed has been accomplished by clear-cutting. Recent clear-cutting in the mid-elevation and higher elevation forests removed some of the oldest stands that had survived multiple large fires in the past (USDA 1995b). Clear-cutting in several subwatersheds[†] within the Skokomish River watershed was accelerated, in part, by the existing Shelton Cooperative Sustained Yield Unit agreement with Simpson Timber Company. Timber harvest has been the primary land use in the upper South Fork Skokomish River, which has impacted the sediment supply of the lower watershed and mainstem Skokomish River. Past timber practices in Vance Creek and the South Fork Skokomish River watersheds have resulted in increased sediment and aggradation as a result of mass wasting and road failures.

Significant portions of the 21 subwatersheds in the Skokomish watershed have been classified as “hydrologically immature” largely due to timber harvest activities, and to a lesser extent, agricultural and residential development. Alterations to aquatic habitat from these activities include an increase in fine sediments, channel aggradation, changes in the natural flow regime[†], loss of in-channel woody debris, and elevated stream temperatures (USDA 1995b).

Although some timber management activities are expected to continue in the future, the majority of U.S. Forest Service lands in the upper South Fork Skokomish River watershed are classified as Late Successional Reserves. In these areas, clear-cut harvest currently is severely restricted, as is commercial thinning of stands over 80 years old. Although effects from past timber harvest are significant, future timber harvest activities are expected to be significantly reduced.

Quinault Core Area. Timber harvest in the Quinault Valley began in 1916 with the salvage of cedar trees from the 1,200-hectare (3,000-acre) “Neilton Burn,” a wildfire that was started by land clearing activities and is now the site of the community of Neilton. Between 1917 and 1940, railroads provided access to the lower Quinault River valley, accelerating logging activities in the lower watershed and tributaries. This early logging removed trees all the way to the stream edge and left no riparian buffers. Logging on the Quinault Indian Reservation began in the 1920's with several large timber sales in the Moclips River, Cook Creek, and Lake Quinault areas followed by the Boulder, Taholah, and Crane Creeks sales in the 1950's. During this time, much gravel was removed from the river to build the railway system (Quinault Indian Nation and USDA 1999).

By the late 1940's, most of the low elevation forests had been harvested and focus shifted to the mid-elevation watersheds, including the headwater areas of Cook, Skunk, North and South Boulder, Prairie, and Canoe Creeks, and Higley Ridge, Quinault Ridge, and Wrights Canyon. Extensive road construction and timber harvest activities continued to move up the basin after 1950, and by 1990 most of the old-growth forests outside of the park boundary, the Colonel Bob Wilderness Area, and a few small administratively withdrawn natural areas, had been logged (Quinault Indian Nation and USDA 1999, WSCC 2001). Clear-cut

harvesting of regenerated stands is continuing on the Quinault Indian Reservation, Washington Department of Natural Resources lands, and on private lands but was virtually stopped on the Olympic National Forest with the adoption of the Northwest Forest Plan in 1994 (USDA and USDI 1994 a,b).

The steep topography and shallow soils of the upper watershed generate both a quick hydrologic response and a high susceptibility to mass wasting events. In contrast, the relatively flat terrain and outwash silts and clays downstream of the lake cause a low susceptibility to mass wasting events and a slower hydrologic response. Because Lake Quinault traps all sediment coarser than silt, the substrate in the river downstream of the lake is a product of the interactions between the floodplain and the surrounding coastal plain.

Loss of riparian and upland vegetation and road construction has impacted bank stability, recruitment of large woody material, floodplain functions, and stream temperatures. Due to the history of intensive timber management, tributaries in the middle and lower watershed have experienced elevated occurrences of slope failures as well as altered peak flows[†] (Quinault Indian Nation and USDA 1999, WSCC 2001). The watershed analysis team rated the hydrologic maturity of the lower Quinault, Cook, and Elk Creeks as “poor.” The increased risk of flooding caused by changes in peak flows has led to flood prevention measures, including channel dredging in Finley, Falls, and Kestner Creeks.

Removal of mature vegetation may increase the incidence of seasonal low flows in Olympic Peninsula streams. Severe low flows have resulted in 19 percent of the channel in Big and Prairie Creeks, 17 percent of Inner Creek, and 9 percent of No Name Creek going dry during the summer (Quinault Indian Nation and USDA 1999). Elevated levels of mass wasting and bank erosion have contributed to sediment aggradation in lower gradient systems, such as Zeigler, Inner, and Big Creeks, giving these systems “poor” ratings for streambed stability.

The watershed analysis rated pool habitat in the Quinault Watershed overall as “good” but noted that pool habitat quality was only “fair” in Camp Creek, “poor” in Big Creek, and “poor” in portions of Ten O’Clock and Prairie

Creeks. Surveys conducted by the Quinault Indian Nation in 1996 in Mounts, Ten O'Clock, Camp, Canyon, Railroad, Prairie, Cook, and Dry Creeks indicated that substrate conditions and levels of woody material are improving in some reaches of these streams (Quinault Indian Nation and USDA 1999).

Riparian shade and large woody material are at historical levels within Olympic National Park and the upper watershed, but decrease in direct proportion to the history of timber harvest activities downstream of the park boundary. While the riparian conditions in the mainstem of the Quinault River are generally rated as "good," the lack of mature vegetation is contributing to elevated temperatures and low levels of wood in lower Cook, Chow Chow, Prairie, Mounts, and Railroad Creeks and the upper headwater areas of many tributaries in the lower watershed.

Queets Core Area. With the creation of Olympic National Park in 1938, and the addition of the Queets Corridor to the park in 1953, approximately 85 percent of the mainstem Queets River was protected from logging. Riparian conditions and water quality in the mainstem are good upstream from the confluence with the Clearwater River, and overall basin conditions are considered to be at historical levels upstream from the confluence with the Sams River (WDFW 1998; WSCC 2001).

Timber harvest began in the 1940's outside the park boundary in the Sams, Matheny, Salmon, and Clearwater drainages. As occurred elsewhere on the Olympic Peninsula, logging activity peaked between 1960 and the mid-1980's. Data are lacking for large woody material levels in the mainstem and many of the tributaries in the watershed, although surveys in Elk Creek (in the lower portion of the basin) have shown a declining trend in the number of large pieces of wood in the channel (Quinault Indian Nation and USDA 1999).

Removal of the riparian trees and the lack of large woody debris have contributed to channel widening, aggradation, and loss of off-channel habitats in Matheny Creek and low gradient sections of the mainstem of the Sams River (USDA 1995a, 1997; Quinault Indian Nation 2000). Removal of the riparian trees and a lack of large wood have also impacted water quality in several other basins. For example, logging has led to increased sedimentation, elevated stream

temperatures, and a lack of large woody material in the Clearwater and Salmon Rivers (WSCC 2001). Research has found that mortality of salmon in the Clearwater River was largely caused by harvest-related landslides, chronic sediment input from logging roads, blockage of access to habitat, and loss of mature riparian vegetation. In the Salmon River, most of the mainstem and tributaries have low potential for recruitment of large wood and levels of fewer than one piece per channel width resulted in a “poor” rating for this subbasin. Removal of large wood during stream clean-out efforts in the 1970's often worsened conditions. In 1972, 3.4 logjams per kilometer (2.1 logjams per mile) were recorded in the North, Middle, and South Forks of the Salmon River, but by 1973 most of these had been removed (WSCC 2001).

Timber harvest activities have also impacted the hydrology and bedload[†] (larger sediment particles, such as gravel and boulders, that are not in continuous suspension in streams) composition of channels in the managed watersheds. The most notable change between managed and unmanaged conditions is a difference in the character of debris flows. In confined channel reaches, such as the upper Matheny Creek, and the Sams, Salmon, and upper Clearwater Rivers, pre-management debris flows tended to have narrow tracks and carry large quantities of wood, often resulting in channel spanning logjams. In contrast, debris flows moving through managed plantations scour larger paths, pick up more sediment, are more frequent, and transport less wood (USDA 1995a). The Salmon River Watershed Analysis Team estimated that timber harvest activities accounted for 51 percent of the landslides, and logging roads caused 25 percent of the mass wasting events (Quinault Indian Nation 2000). The density of landslides, both natural and management related, is very high in the Sams River and North Creek watersheds. Of the management-related mass wasting events, most were associated with slope failures in clear-cuts and loss of fill on steep side-cast roads and perched landings. Changes in timber management and efforts to close and stabilize roads, particularly on National Forest lands, is expected to reduce the magnitude of this problem.

Hoh Core Area. The upper mainstem Hoh River and upper South Fork Hoh River lie within Olympic National Park and have had little impact from forest practices. The Hoh River drainage outside of the park has been heavily logged. The middle Hoh River is largely surrounded by private landowners and

Washington Department of Natural Resources lands. The lower Hoh includes lands within the Hoh Indian Reservation. Impacts from current forest management likely will still occur on private lands. More protective State forest practice rules, however, should make these impacts less severe than in the past, when there were very few regulations.

In the middle Hoh River and its tributaries, much of the late successional riparian forest has been removed, and without protective buffers being required, many riparian forests were logged to the stream bank. Following this riparian logging, many miles of riparian forest have been converted to younger stands, often dominated by deciduous trees. Within the middle section of the Hoh River, areas identified as having a scarcity of large woody debris include the mainstem Hoh River downstream of its confluence with the South Fork Hoh River, as well as Pins, Winfield, Elk, Willoughby, and Maple Creeks, and several unnamed tributaries (WSCC 2000b).

Clear-cut harvest on steep slopes within the Hoh River drainage is another legacy[†] of past forest management that has resulted in increased incidences of mass wasting, and within the middle Hoh River, a widespread incidence of channelized landslides (McHenry, in prep.). In the Huelsdonk Ridge area of the middle Hoh River, landslides have increased six to seven times above historical levels, with increases associated with clear-cutting (63 percent) and roads (27 percent).

Debris flows have become common in the Hoh River, resulting in a reduction of macroinvertebrates, which are primary food items for salmonids. Populations of macroinvertebrates are 75 percent higher in Olympic National Park reaches compared to areas impacted by debris flows (WSCC 2000b). The spawning gravels in Hoh River tributaries have been impacted by these channelized landslides. It is more difficult to assess the impacts of this increased sedimentation on the mainstem Hoh River because the mainstem is already heavily influenced by glacial flour (very fine-grained silt suspended in the water) from several active glaciers.

Channel morphologies in several tributaries have been altered by the combination of mass wasting and loss of large wood. This combination has

resulted in pool area and quality being significantly reduced as pool-riffle morphologies are converted to plain-bed or glide morphologies. Pools provide important habitat for bull trout staging, foraging, and seeking cover. Examples within the middle Hoh River where this reduction has been observed include Owl, Alder, Spruce, Willoughby, and Winfield Creeks (McHenry, in prep.).

Elevated water temperatures are the result of loss of riparian vegetation in the mainstem Hoh River, lower South Fork Hoh River, and several adjacent tributaries (WDFW 1998). Fisher, Willoughby, Rock, Elk, Canyon, Anderson, Alder, Line, Maple, Nolan, Owl, Split, Tower, and Winfield Creeks were listed on the Washington Department of Ecology's 303(d) list and also are on the 1998 Candidate 303(d) for high water temperatures (WSCC 2000b). Section 303(d) of the Clean Water Act (33 USC 1251 *et seq.*) requires that States periodically prepare a list of all surface waters for which beneficial uses (*e.g.*, drinking, recreation, and aquatic habitat) are impaired by pollutants.

Several tributaries in the Hoh have been impacted by cedar spalts, waste wood left over from cedar salvage operations. Large instream accumulations of spalts can block fish passage, impede water flows leading to warmer water temperatures, and degrade water quality by leaching tannins into the water. Cedar spalts can form "dams," and as the dams float up and down in high and low flows, they carve stream banks and increase fine sediments. In riparian areas impacted by spalts, the wood often covers the ground, inhibiting further plant growth. Areas impacted by cedar spalts include Anderson, Willoughby, Winfield, Nolan, Braden, Clear, Red, Lost, Pins, and Snell Creeks (WSCC 2000b).

Elwha Core Area. Approximately 85 percent of the watershed is located within the Olympic National Park, and this part of the watershed is in excellent condition with little impact from forest management activities. Impacts from current forest management will likely still occur on private lands. More protective State forest practice rules, however, should make these impacts less severe than in the past, when there were very few regulations.

Little River, a potential local population, is located outside of Olympic National Park, and commercial timber harvest and housing development have impacted water quality (WSCC 2000a). Increased sediment from logging has

been identified in the Little River. Although this is not a major threat, fine sediment can affect bull trout egg incubation success and juvenile rearing.

Dungeness Core Area. Timber harvesting has affected the occurrence and distribution of most vegetation types in the Dungeness River watershed. Impacts from current forest management will likely still occur on private and Olympic National Forest lands, but the Northwest Forest Plan Aquatic Conservation Strategy and more protective State forest practice rules should make these impacts less severe than in the past.

All forest successional stages are present in the watershed, and currently the greatest majority are in the mid-successional stage. In the lower Dungeness River watershed, below approximately 472 meters (1,550 feet) elevation, most forest vegetation has been permanently removed and converted to nonforest vegetation. In the middle elevations of the watershed, timber harvesting by clear-cutting has targeted old-growth forest communities. The upper elevation forest vegetation zones are incorporated within Olympic National Park and wilderness areas where logging is prohibited.

A total of 6,123 hectares (15,130 acres) of the Dungeness River watershed on National Forest and Washington Department of Natural Resources lands has been either clear-cut or commercially thinned since 1940. This does not include the acres harvested on private forest lands nor does it include the forested area in the lower watershed that has been permanently modified since 1850 by agricultural, urban, and residential development. The 6,123 hectares (15,130 acres) represents a total of 8.5 percent of the entire watershed area, but totals 32 percent of the combined Washington Department of Natural Resources and National Forest area (excluding designated Wilderness Areas) available for harvest since 1940 (USDA 1995c). The majority of the clear-cut harvest activity in the watershed has occurred in five of the subwatersheds: Gold, Johnson, McDonald, and Siebert Creeks and the upper Dungeness River. In Gold Creek, a major landslide (deep-seated failure) is still active and is a chronic contributor of sediment to the creek. The upper Dungeness watershed is inherently unstable due to primary geologic characteristics, and of the sediment annually deposited in the Dungeness River, 58 percent is from undisturbed forest areas and 42 percent is associated with disturbed or clear-cut areas (WSCC 2000a).

Chehalis River/Grays Harbor Foraging, Migration, and Overwintering Habitat. The Chehalis Basin has been impacted by a wide variety of disturbances. Logging, agriculture, and grazing in the basin have degraded habitat by removing riparian vegetation, increasing silt loads, and decreasing woody debris (Hiss and Knudsen 1993; WDFW 1998). Pulp mills in the lower river have also impacted habitat through discharge of effluents that range from toxic to benign (WDFW 1998). The lower mainstem of the Chehalis River has at least nine sites that are included on the 1998 Washington Department of Ecology proposed 303(d) list for not meeting temperature, dissolved oxygen, fecal coliform, and polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB) standards (WDOE 1998). Impacts from current forest management will likely still occur on private and Olympic National Forest lands, but the Northwest Forest Plan Aquatic Conservation Strategy and more protective State forest practice rules should make these impacts less severe than in the past.

Goodman Creek, and Moclips, Copalis, and Raft Rivers: Foraging, Migration, and Overwintering Habitat. Habitat in the Goodman Creek and the Copalis and Moclips Rivers has been degraded by past logging activities (WDFW 1998). Phinney and Bucknell (1975) noted that logging activities in the Moclips watershed have reduced the former fisheries potential of this system. In the Raft River drainage, riparian areas have also been heavily logged. Siltation of the gravel due to these activities is excessive in many of the tributary streams. In Goodman Creek, natural low flows in the summer (WDW 1992) and the loss of riparian vegetation from past logging may have created a thermal barrier for migrating bull trout. Impacts from current forest management will likely still occur on private and Olympic National Forest lands, but the Northwest Forest Plan Aquatic Conservation Strategy and more protective State forest practice rules should make these impacts less severe than in the past.

Agriculture (Factors A and E)

Overview. The Skokomish and Dungeness core areas have both current and long-term historical effects from agriculture that impact fisheries, water quality, and connectivity. The most significant impacts have generally been restricted to the lower elevation areas of watersheds, estuarine and nearshore areas, or along floodplains of mainstem river reaches. Agricultural practices have

regularly included stream channelization and diking, large woody debris and natural riparian vegetation removal, use of herbicides and pesticides, and bank armoring that have degraded and simplified aquatic and riparian habitats (USDA 1995a; Spence *et al.* 1996; WSCC 2000a).

Functioning estuaries provide important habitat for rearing salmonids and other bull trout forage species. In some cases, tidally influenced habitats have been significantly reduced as a result of extensive diking and the placement of tidegates. Tidegates can impair fish passage and severely limit the saltwater exchange with the historical estuary. Although flood control measures (*e.g.*, diking) protect agricultural, residential, and urban development interests, they can negatively impact bull trout.

Agricultural lands have often been further altered by conversion to residential and urban developments. The impacts associated with this conversion have been addressed under “Residential and Urban Development.”

Skokomish River Core Area. The lower Skokomish River, also referred to as the mainstem, flows through a broad valley of agriculture, rural hobby farms, and rural development. Significant vegetation change in the lower Skokomish Valley and riparian areas began during the late 1800's with the agricultural development of the fertile floodplains. Conversion of forest to agricultural development is evident throughout the valley. Several family farms currently operate in the Skokomish Valley, producing feed for livestock, hay, vegetables, and Christmas trees.

The concentration of agricultural development in close proximity to the Skokomish River has had a significant impact on natural conditions in the river (USDA 1995b). The majority of the mainstem Skokomish River has been diked, armored, and/or channelized, which has eliminated access to important side channels, sloughs, and wetland habitats (WSCC 2003). A combination of reduced transport capability from water withdrawal and accelerated sediment supply from logging activities, channelization, and levee construction has resulted in streambed aggradation (WSCC 2003). As diking restricts flooding flows from distributing sediments onto the floodplain, the aggradation in the streambed increases, leading to further diking, dredging, and aggradation.

A majority of the riparian vegetation along the lower Skokomish River and its tributaries has been removed or modified for farming, timber production, or flood protection, reducing the amount of wood entering the river system for fish habitat. Many of the riparian trees that do enter the river in this area are salvaged or removed for firewood or flood control. Loss of riparian vegetation has also reduced streambanks stability.

Vance Creek, the largest tributary to the Skokomish River, has also been diked, channelized, and armored. These actions have greatly reduced channel complexity, stability, and sinuosity. Gravel deposits are 91 meters (300 feet) wide in some places and the stream is commonly dry or subsurface during late summer months (WSCC 2003).

Dungeness Core Area. Rural and agricultural land comprises 14,504 hectares (35,838 acres) or 21 percent of the watershed and includes pasture, hayland, cropland, and private woodlots. The rural and agricultural area is generally located between forest lands and incorporated urban areas. Impacts from agriculture have occurred historically and continue to occur although best management practices are being implemented in some areas to reduce adverse impacts to salmonids.

Instream flow reduction due to irrigation withdrawals has been a long-standing concern in the Dungeness River. The extensive irrigation system within the Dungeness Valley is unique in western Washington (WSCC 2000a). Beginning in 1896, the Dungeness River became a source of water to convert the dry land into productive farming. By 1921 there were nine organizations diverting water from the Dungeness River to irrigate agricultural land. By 1998 the irrigation system contained approximately 100 kilometers (62 miles) of main ditch canal and another 179 kilometers (111 miles) of secondary ditches and laterals (Montgomery 1999 in WSCC 2000a). Seventy to 80 percent of the agricultural land in the Dungeness Valley is irrigated from water diverted from the Dungeness River and area streams through this extensive network of irrigation ditches. Diversion of water for irrigation that results in low flows impacts bull trout by blocking migration during late summer-early fall, decreasing juvenile rearing areas, transporting pollutants through irrigation flow returns, and increasing water temperatures and aggradation of the streambed (WSCC 2000a).

Temperature data show a trend of increasing mean temperature since the 1950's. Rearing habitat is seasonally limited by water withdrawals and elevated temperature in the lower river (WSCC 2000a).

Bedload aggradation in some portions of the lower river, which has affected fish access in the Dungeness River, will require river flows to be much higher than in the past to provide the same depth of water in the main channel and access to side channels. Increased flow requirements resulting from identified areas of bed aggradation suggest that irrigation diversion currently poses a greater problem than it did historically (WSCC 2001).

Concurrent with the development of an irrigation system in the Dungeness Valley, flood and erosion control activities were being undertaken to protect agricultural lands, and later the rural development occurring when agricultural lands were converted for housing development. Alterations from diking are most evident in the lower Dungeness downstream from the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife Dungeness Hatchery at river mile 10.8. By eliminating connectivity of the river to its floodplain, these dikes prevent high flows from moving into the floodplain to reduce stream energy and to store and transport sediment. Dikes originally constructed to accommodate a 100-year flood now are barely able to accommodate a 27-year flood, due to the aggradation of sediment in diked portions of the channel (WSCC 2000a). Diking that constricts or eliminates the connectivity of the main channel with the full extent of the meander within the floodplain also adversely affects or eliminates the availability of side channel habitats.

Historically, when the valley was being developed for agriculture, the removal of large wood and logjams from the Dungeness River was a prominent element of flood control actions. Wood in the river is now primarily composed of small pieces located mainly outside the channel, with few key pieces available to form logjams. Removal of debris jams has resulted in increased water velocities, with associated channel instability and bank erosion (WSCC 2000a).

The Dungeness River is on the Washington Department of Ecology 303(d) list of impaired water bodies for instream flows. Water rights to the Dungeness River actually exceed actual flows. Extensive irrigation systems in the

Dungeness not only decrease instream flow, but these decreased flows likely contribute to elevated water temperatures. Temperature data for the lower river indicate a trend of increasing mean temperature since the 1950's (Clark and Clark 1996 in WSCC 2000a). The largest contributor of nonpoint source pollution in the Dungeness watershed was identified as agricultural activities, including direct animal access to waterways and irrigation diversions and laterals that direct field-applied pesticides and fertilizers into the river (WSCC 2000a).

Although the amount of estuarine wetlands has not declined significantly in the Dungeness River estuary, both the character and function of the estuary appear to have changed from historical conditions (WSCC 2000a). Diking of the lower Dungeness River has eliminated the ability of the river to use the floodplain to transport and store peak flows and associated sediment across the floodplain. The routing of the river flow within the current primary channel has eliminated virtually all historical low gradient and salt marsh estuarine habitat that provided excellent rearing and foraging habitat for bull trout.

An associated nearshore habitat concern is the loss of eelgrass in the shallow intertidal areas. Eelgrass provides valuable habitat for a variety of marine species important to the bull trout prey base, including rearing juvenile salmonids and spawning herring (O'Toole *et al.* 2000). To accommodate residential and urban development it is likely that extensive eelgrass meadows have been eliminated with filling of intertidal areas, bank armoring, and modifications of shoreline morphology.

Transportation Networks (Factor A)

Overview. Dunham and Rieman (1999) found the density of roads at the landscape level to be negatively correlated with bull trout occurrence. Roads facilitate excessive inputs of fine sediment, alter hydrology, and degrade habitat in streams. Roads also increase human access, which may cause angling mortality, introductions of nonnative fishes, and increase the potential for water pollution through impervious surfaces and accidental spills (Spence *et al.* 1996; Trombulak and Frissell 2000).

The preservation and reconnection of remaining stronghold areas and associated high quality habitats for the species is a widely held principle of managing for the survival and recovery of threatened and endangered aquatic species. In an analysis of the Swan River basin in Montana, a bull trout stronghold of regional significance, bull trout redd numbers were negatively correlated with the density of logging roads in spawning tributary streams (Baxter *et al.* 1999). Wilderness, National Park land, and roadless areas contain most of the best available remaining habitat for bull trout, steelhead, and salmon (Frissell 1993; WDFW 1998).

The Skokomish, Dungeness, Hoh, Queets, and Quinault core areas have both current and long-term historical effects from roads and transportation networks that impact fisheries, water quality, and connectivity. Large networks of forest haul roads, skid trails/roads, and yarding corridors now exist in many Olympic Peninsula watersheds. The road network is so large that much of it cannot be maintained to current regulatory standards. Much of this road network crosses or parallels stream channels, leaving a legacy of problems, such as chronic bank erosion, debris flows, fish passage barriers, chronic delivery of fine sediments, and slope failures. Although the majority of impacts to the aquatic habitat are from long-term historical effects of roads, new roads continue to be constructed. Rashin *et al.* (1999) found that best management practices used, even in new road construction, were generally ineffective or only partially effective at preventing chronic sediment delivery to streams when the activity occurred near streams.

Road density is one measurement of the impact of roads on a basin. In the Columbia Basin, a recent assessment revealed that increasing road densities and their related effects are associated with declines in the status of four nonanadromous salmonid species: bull trout, Yellowstone cutthroat trout (*Onchorynchus clarki bouvieri*), westslope cutthroat trout (*Onchorynchus clarki lewisi*), and redband trout (*Onchorynchus mykiss gibbsi*) (Quigley and Arbelbide 1997). The assessment determined that bull trout were less likely to use highly roaded basins for spawning and rearing, and if a bull trout population was found, it was less likely to be at strong population levels (Quigley and Arbelbide 1997). Quigley *et al.* (1996) demonstrated that, where average road densities were between 0.4 and 1.0 kilometers per square kilometer (0.7 and 1.7 miles per square

mile) on National Forest lands, the proportion of subwatersheds supporting “strong” populations of key salmonids dropped substantially, declining even further with higher road densities.

On the Olympic National Forest a threshold density of 1.5 kilometers of road per square kilometer (2.5 miles per square mile) of basin was developed in 1990 by an interdisciplinary team as part of an evaluation process for watershed conditions (USDA 1995c). Road density data were also used to prioritize areas of concern and in need of restoration. The density threshold used by the Olympic National Forest is higher than that found by Quigley *et al.* (1996) to support “strong” populations of salmonids.

Impacts to bull trout habitat from roads and transportation networks are significant in all core areas except the Elwha core area. Assessments of road densities reported for many watersheds in the Olympic National Forest are much higher than the densities reported by Quigley *et al.* (1996) (USDA 1995a,b,c). Furthermore, the Quigley *et al.* (1996) assessment was conducted east of the Cascade Mountains, but the effects from high road densities may be worse in western Washington. The highest precipitation in the State is found on the Olympic Peninsula, which increases the frequency of surface erosion and mass wasting (USDI *et al.* 1996b).

In analysis of impacts to streams from roads, an additional factor to consider is the location of the road in the watershed. In general, the farther a road is upslope of a stream and/or the flatter the topography, the less potential for sediment incursion into a stream or adverse alteration of the riparian or streambank zones.

Roads and/or railroad grades have impacted wetlands and other components of all core areas, intercepted and channelized runoff and groundwater, prevented wood from reaching the channel, caused channel constrictions at crossings, increased sedimentation, and degraded floodplain functions. In the upper watersheds these impacts degrade spawning and rearing habitat. In lower rivers and tributaries, these impacts can affect water temperature and coldwater refugia, likely important factors for bull trout foraging, migrating, and holding during the summer.

Improperly sized or located culverts are a significant legacy of roads in all core areas except Elwha. The Washington State Conservation Commission limiting factors and watershed resources inventory identifies many problem culverts, as well as other impacts to salmonid habitat, related to roads and road construction (WSCC 1999; 2000a,b; 2001). Culverts are also discussed in “Isolation and Fragmentation” under the “Reasons for Decline” section.

Skokomish Core Area. There are approximately 750 kilometers (470 miles) of State, Federal, County, and private roads within the watershed (USDA 1995b). The road density by subwatershed ranges from 3.7 kilometers of road per square kilometer (6.0 miles per square mile) to fewer than 1.5 kilometers of road per square kilometer (2.5 miles per square mile). Roads have changed hydrologic flow patterns in the Skokomish watershed, resulting in significant mass wasting of soil and vegetation.

Results of the South Fork Skokomish River Watershed Analysis indicate a significant impairment of aquatic habitat within the core area due to extensive vegetation removal and road construction (USDA 1995b). Of the 21 subbasins identified, 16 exceeded the road density criteria of 1.5 kilometers per square kilometer (2.5 miles per square mile) (USDA 1995b). Of these, 13 have densities greater than 1.9 kilometers per square kilometer (3.0 miles per square mile) of subbasin. Areas with high road densities include much of the South Fork Skokomish River and Purdy, Vance, Rock, LeBar, and Cedar Creeks (WSCC 2003).

Some road decommissioning occurred prior to the 1995 South Fork Skokomish River Watershed Analysis, and road decommissioning continues to be high priority action for the Olympic National Forest. For example, Brown Creek road decommissioning has removed all spur roads, and a total of 14.4 to 16 kilometers (9 to 10 miles) of road have been decommissioned. In 1995 there were 280 road crossings in the Vance Creek watershed. The U.S. Forest Service has decommissioned numerous roads since 1995 and this number has likely been reduced. New logging roads on private lands are still being constructed (WSCC 2003).

Approximately 2,500 existing erosion sites have been identified with the Skokomish core area (USDA 1995a). These sites range in size from 0.1 to 2 hectares (0.25 to 5 acres). Ninety percent of all inventoried sites are associated with roads; the other 10 percent are stream bank or timber harvest unit slope failures. Sixty-five percent of all sites affect the aquatic system (USDA 1995a). Less than 5 percent of the sites are associated with mass wasting events; the majority of sites are the result of surface erosion. During the winter of 1994, storm events along road systems in the upper watershed resulted in 15 mass wasting events.

Quinault Core Area. Within Olympic National Park, road access extends to the Graves Creek Guard Station at river mile 53.5 and the North Fork Ranger Station, approximately 4.8 kilometers (3.0 miles) upstream from the confluence of Graves Creek and the North Fork Quinault River. Although bridges are used for major crossings, smaller tributaries and intermittent channels pass through culverts that may block passage for juvenile bull trout. Maintenance of the North Fork and Graves Creek roads has led to streambank destabilizations, loss of riparian and floodplain function, and possible impacts to potential bull trout spawning and rearing habitat.

A 1996 survey of road-related bank stabilization in the Olympic National Park identified 246 meters (820 feet) of armoring along the North Shore Road, 652 meters (2,172 feet, or 0.4 miles) of armoring along a 3.2-kilometer (2-mile) stretch of Graves Creek Road, 661 meters (2,202 feet) of bank protection on the South Shore Road, 738 meters (2,461 feet) of revetments[†] on the North Shore Road, and 148 meters (492 feet) of armoring at the Quinault Bridge for a total of 2.5 kilometers (1.55 miles) (WSCC 2001). This figure does not take into account additional bank protection on private lands between Lake Quinault and the bridge at Cannings Creek. The area upstream from Lake Quinault has experienced several channel changes and road washouts over the past 20 years. Because of the increase in bank protection measures along both sides of the mainstem, this section of the upper watershed was rated as “poor” for floodplain functions and riparian conditions. The watershed analysis (Quinault Indian Nation and USDA 1999) identified several roads within the watershed as high priority for restoration, including Graves Creek and the North Fork Roads in the park, the North and South Shore Roads upstream from Lake Quinault, midslope roads on

Quinault Ridge, roads on Canoe and Prairie Creeks, and old railroad grades and abandoned logging roads in the lower watershed.

Although culvert inventories are incomplete, the current database identified stream crossings in Higley, Slide, McCalla (Highway 101), and McCormick Creeks where culverts needed repairs or presented fish passage problems (WSCC 2001). Several culverts on Gatton Creek, the South Shore Road, July Creek, and at the Rainforest Resort have also been identified as being potential fish barriers (WSCC 2001). The extent to which these streams are used by bull trout is unknown, although these streams could provide access for other salmonids.

Queets Core Area. The upper Queets River watershed upstream from the confluence with the Sams River is roadless and considered to be in pristine condition. However, the Queets River Road parallels the mainstem from the Queets River Campground at river mile 23 to the Highway 101 bridge. Because the corridor is not very wide, road densities in the floodplain are 1.5 kilometers per square kilometers (2.5 miles per square mile). Even though the Queets River Road is located on the terrace or toe slope[†] for much of the way, impacts to the river have occurred. A major problem area has been identified west of the Matheny Creek bridge where the road traverses an unstable slope (WSCC 2001). The hillside is composed primarily of glacial clay that causes turbidity in the river during heavy rains or whenever road maintenance activities are conducted in that area. Other than two bridge crossings, there are no roads in the floodplain downstream from river mile 10.

Road densities in the lower and upper Clearwater River are 2.3 and 2.0 kilometers per square kilometer (3.7 and 3.2 miles per square mile), respectively (WSCC 2001). These high road densities suggest a large number of stream crossings. Fish passage problems likely occur at many stream crossings, and the risk of road sediment input is high, particularly on midslope roads where side-cast construction methods were used. Several large road-related debris torrents were documented in the Snahapish River, Suzie Creek, and Sollecks River watersheds in recent years. These events affected both the streams of origin as well as the Clearwater River, and impacted fish habitat and salmonid populations for many years. The watershed analysis (USDA 1995a) identified several midslope and

steep switchback roads in areas with high potential for mass wasting, including many with undersized culverts and deep and unstable fills. Roads identified as needing repair or decommissioning on Washington Department of Natural Resources and U.S. Forest Service lands in the Matheny Creek and Clearwater River drainages include the West Boundary Road, Queets Ridge, old log stringer bridges in the Stequaleho drainage, two stream crossings on the Hoh-Clearwater mainline at Donkey and Iskrah Creeks (tributaries to Shale Creek), and several old logging roads in the Salmon River watershed. However, the current status of these roads is unknown.

The watershed analysis (USDA 1995a) noted that, for roads located in the floodplain, lack of routine maintenance (especially culvert cleaning), improper drainage systems, and management-related mass wasting events cause chronic degradation of fish habitat and contribute to the loss of off-channel rearing habitat. Aerial photo interpretation and data analysis indicated that 56 percent of the landslides in Matheny Creek were road related, and 44 percent originated within timber harvest units. In the Salmon River drainage, 51 percent of the landslides were caused by timber harvest activities, and 25 percent were related to road failures (Quinault Indian Nation 2000).

Road information is relatively complete for the Salmon River, and surveys indicate that none of the culverts currently present a fish passage barrier (Quinault Indian Nation 2000). The watershed analysis (USDA 1995a, 1997) identified potential road-related problems in the Clearwater subbasin, Sams and Salmon River watersheds, on Kostly and Tacoma Creeks, Hook Branch, and the Lower, Middle, and South Forks of Matheny Creek.

Hoh Core Area. Riparian roads in the Hoh River basin have impacted both instream and floodplain habitat. Some of these roads closely parallel the streams, acting as dikes, disconnecting potential off-channel habitat, and increasing sediment to streams (WSCC 2000b). Some of the most heavily impacted streams include Nolan and Owl Creeks and the mainstem Hoh River. The volume of fine sediment transported from precipitation runoff is directly related to road density. In the Hoh basin, road density also correlates to an increase in debris flows within the basin, and the density of midslope roads correlates with increases in peak flows.

Improperly sized or located culverts block fish access in several streams within the Hoh core area. These streams include Dismal, Nolan, Braden, Canyon, Cassel Creeks and several unnamed tributaries to the Hoh River (WSCC 2000b).

The Upper Hoh Road provides the primary access to Olympic National Park and contains miles of riprap[†] for bank armoring. The road constricts the river and has been washed out several times as the river abandoned one channel while moving to create a new route or channel. As the road is rebuilt, additional bank armoring has been added to the river in an attempt to stabilize the road. The large boulders used for armoring prevent channel migration and formation of new habitats, create unnatural meander patterns, and disconnect the mainstem from off-channel habitats and adjacent riparian forest.

As of August 2000, the estimated amount of riprap along the Hoh River from the Hoh campground (river mile 33) to the mouth was approximately 4,737 meters (15,542 feet), with 3,055 meters (10,023 feet) located outside Olympic National Park and 1,682 meters (5,518 feet) located inside Olympic National Park. However, a greater proportion of the Hoh River is hardened inside Olympic National Park (17.0 percent) than outside of the Park (6.3 percent) (Brenkman, *in litt.* 2003a).

Dungeness Core Area. Forest road management has been a major concern in the Dungeness core area. Roads in this core area have increased both the potential for mass wasting (*i.e.*, failure of side-cast road construction material, failure resulting from concentrated or blocked drainage across roads) and the amount of fine sediment delivered to the stream channel. In 1949, there were only 13.3 kilometers (8.3 miles) of logging roads constructed on U.S. Forest Service lands in the Dungeness watershed. By 1983 the road mileage had increased by a factor of 10, with a doubling of road mileage between 1965 and 1983 (WSCC 2000a).

Of the 24 subbasins within the Dungeness River watershed, 16 exceed the 1.5 kilometers per square kilometer (2.5 miles per square mile) threshold for watershed condition analysis as established by the Olympic National Forest (USDA 1995c). Twelve of the 16 subbasins are located in lower elevation watersheds where significant rural and urban development has occurred. Much of

the stream bank and riparian effects associated with that development have been identified in “Residential Development and Forest Management” under the “Reasons for Decline” section. Four subbasins occur at the mid-level elevation zone between the rural and urban development and the forested lands within the Olympic National Park and U.S. Forest Service wilderness areas: Pats, Caraco, and Gold Creeks and the Middle Dungeness River. These four subbasins were historically managed for extensive timber production (USDA 1995c), and Gold and Caraco Creeks also exceeded the road density threshold within the riparian area. Most of the road construction within the middle elevation subbasins (up to the Olympic National Park and wilderness boundaries) was related to timber harvest (USDA 1995c). Extensive slope failures and slides associated with unstable geology and road construction have occurred along Gold and Silver Creeks.

A very high rate of road failure on U.S. Forest Service land occurred following the winter of 1998 to 1999. This is particularly evident on U.S. Forest Service Roads 2860, 2870, and 2880 (WSCC 2000a). Extensive mass wasting associated with these roads has occurred, and there is concern about the potential for future mass wasting.

In an analysis of floodplain modifications in the lower Dungeness River (downstream from river mile 10.8) several channel constrictions associated with bridges were identified (WSCC 2000a). Channel and floodplain constrictions exist at Ward Bridge; channel constrictions occur at old Olympic Highway and Railroad Bridges; and bedload transport is restricted by Highway 101 bridge piers and openings.

Residential Development and Urbanization (Factor A)

Overview. Residential development and urbanization have occurred within portions of several core areas, including the Dungeness, Skokomish, and to a lesser extent, the Elwha core areas. Greatest impacts have been to lower river channels and estuarine and nearshore marine habitats. Where these habitats remain intact, residential development continues to pose a threat. These habitats are important to anadromous bull trout for foraging and migration. Significant portions of nearshore habitat in Hood Canal and the Strait of Juan de Fuca have

been altered by bulkheads placed to protect various developments. Stormwater runoff from residential development and urbanization contributes to nonpoint source water pollution from the transport of toxic metals and organic contaminants, such as petroleum hydrocarbons. Other sources of toxic contaminants are discharges of municipal and industrial wastewater, pesticide runoff from residential lands, leaching contaminants from shoreline structures (*i.e.*, treated wood), and channel dredging. Land clearing and impervious surfaces alter the hydrologic regime. Channelization and the construction of dikes and levees have altered lower river channels in several core areas. These activities have simplified once complex stream channels, degrading important foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat for bull trout and their prey base.

Anadromous bull trout use marine habitats for foraging and growth and seasonally may enter marine waters to prey on surf smelt or Pacific herring where they school or spawn (Kraemer 1994). These species depend on the nearshore marine environment and spawn in the intertidal or shallow subtidal waters at specific locations (WDFW 2000). These locations are very vulnerable to destruction or modification through human activities, especially urban and rural development. Techniques have not been developed to mitigate for or replace spawning habitat modified or destroyed by human activities.

Forage fish, bottom fish, and wild salmon have declined in the Puget Sound (PSWQAT 2000). Part of this decline has been attributed to human encroachment and development of the nearshore areas throughout Hood Canal and the Strait of Juan de Fuca that has resulted in the loss of nearshore³ habitat. It is likely that anadromous bull trout have been impacted by the decline in forage base and loss of habitat in this marine environment.

Many historical floodplain areas that were originally diked and drained for agricultural use have been or are now being converted to residential and industrial

³ Nearshore habitat (20 meters [65 feet] below the mean low water mark to 61 meters [200 feet] upland of the ordinary highwater mark) generally includes several of the following habitats: bluffs, beaches, marshes, riparian vegetation, sandflats, mudflats, rock and gravel habitats, unvegetated subtidal areas, kelp beds, intertidal algae, and eelgrass beds (PSWQAT 2000).

developments. The effects of dikes, levees, and other flood control actions on bull trout habitat are discussed in “Agriculture” under the “Reasons For Decline” section.

Skokomish Core Area. Along with agricultural development in the Skokomish River Valley, residential development has resulted in conversion of forest land and construction of roads, levees, and bank protection. About 1,093 hectares (2,700 acres) of the Skokomish River floodplain have been converted to residential or agricultural uses (USDA 1995b). Most residential and recreational development around Lake Cushman occurs on the west side of the lake. All businesses and residences have individual septic systems, often in close proximity to the lake. However, the effects on water quality in Lake Cushman from this development is unknown.

Floodway mapping indicates that the entire Skokomish Valley is within the 100-year floodplain of the Skokomish River (Federal Energy Regulatory Agency 1996). In addition, a rain-on-snow event large enough to cause flooding occurs in the Skokomish Valley at least once a year (USDA 1995b). In an attempt to reduce or prevent property damage from flooding, levees have been constructed along the river. Levee construction has contributed to raising the river channel bottom. Levee construction using gravel material excavated from the river channel leaves the levees highly vulnerable to failure. Erosion control projects have also been implemented to maintain the Skokomish River within defined areas to reduce the loss of property. These dikes, levees, and bank protection projects have also contributed to the loss of ecological function in the Skokomish River estuary by concentrating stream flows and sediment that normally would pass through productive zones of the adjacent surge and tide planes (USDA 1995b).

Quinault Core Area. Residential developments in the Quinault core area are limited to the communities of Quinault and Amanda Park on the south shore of Lake Quinault and the Tribal community of Taholah at the mouth of the river. Although some concern for water quality related to waste water and the proximity of aging septic systems to the shoreline around Lake Quinault have been raised, development is not considered to be a significant impact to bull trout in the Quinault core area.

Queets Core Area. The small communities of Queets, Clearwater, and Kalaloch include the majority of the residential and commercial developments in this watershed. Because the Queets River area is very sparsely populated, impacts from residential development are considered minor in this core area.

Elwha Core Area. The upper Elwha River is within Olympic National Park and has not been impacted by residential and urban development; impacts from these activities are found mainly in the lower Elwha River. Concurrent with residential development, the lower Elwha River floodplain has been altered and encroached upon by the construction of dikes. Dikes have been constructed in locations on the lower Elwha River, including the Lower Elwha S'Klallam Tribe's reservation at river mile 3.5, to protect the City of Port Angeles industrial water pipeline and on the west side of the estuary to protect homes (WSCC 2000a). These dikes have not only constricted the channel but have severely impacted nearshore and estuary habitat and processes.

The City of Port Angeles maintains water rights on the Elwha River and Morse Creek. In 1927, the city obtained rights to 150 cubic feet per second of water, a substantial withdrawal from the river. In 1974, through a change in the use permit, 50 of the 150 cubic feet per second were appropriated for salmon rearing by Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife.

Dungeness Core Area. Port Angeles is a major urban area with associated residential development in the Dungeness core area. In 1991, urban areas were estimated to total 166 hectares (410 acres). However, these figures are thought to significantly underestimate the actual area currently encompassed due to significant urban and suburban development since that time (WSCC 2000a). Increased stormwater due to forest and agricultural conversion (loss of vegetative ground cover) and urbanization (culverts, ditches, and impervious surfaces) has contributed to degradation of water quality in the lower Dungeness River and associated tributaries.

Extensive urban and rural development occurring in the lower Dungeness and tributaries has resulted in a proliferation of shallow groundwater wells. There is a high likelihood that these wells are continuous with surface water flows in the

lower watershed and are affected by groundwater return flows from irrigation in the watershed (WSCC 2000a).

Rural residential areas include 3,960 housing units broken down into two densities, high (less than 0.6 hectares [1.5 acres] per housing unit) and low (0.6 to 2 hectares [1.5 to 5 acres] per housing unit) (WSCC 2000a). Much of the current rural residential development in the watershed is supported by septic tanks. Approximately 82 percent of the soils within the watershed have severe limitations for on-site septic use (WSCC 2000a).

In the Dungeness core area, flood and erosion control, channelizing, and bedload aggradation are linked to a combination of factors, including agriculture and residential and urban development. Effects from these actions are described in “Agriculture” in the “Reasons for Decline” section.

Loss of eelgrass in the intertidal or shallow area is a key nearshore habitat concern. Eelgrass provides valuable habitat for a variety of marine species important to bull trout for prey base, including rearing juvenile salmonids and spawning herring (O’Toole *et al.* 2000). To accommodate residential and urban development it is likely that extensive eelgrass meadows have been eliminated with filling of intertidal areas, bank armoring, and modifications of shoreline morphology.

Hood Canal Foraging, Migration, and Overwintering Habitat. Hood Canal is a relatively narrow bay with a shallow sill near its entrance, making it sensitive to pollution. Based on water quality monitoring data, southern Hood Canal was identified by the Washington Department of Ecology as an area of “very high concern” for very low dissolved oxygen and for limiting concentrations of nitrogen in dissolved nutrients (WDOE, *in litt.* 2001). During the late 1960’s, human population growth and development in the Hood Canal region, particularly along the shorelines, began to increase dramatically. Many areas along the canal have violated water quality standards established by Washington State and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Poor water quality in Hood Canal is primarily due to impacts from nonpoint source pollution (Hood Canal Technical Work Group 1995). This pollution includes bacterial, nutrient, sediment, and chemical contamination. Most of these contaminants are

transported to Hood Canal via stormwater runoff. Surf smelt, Pacific herring, and Pacific sand lance, all significant prey items for anadromous bull trout, depend on the nearshore marine environment. These forage fish in Hood Canal exist in an increasingly urbanized and threatened environment (O'Toole *et al.* 2000).

The abundance of chum salmon fry, another significant prey species, has been positively correlated with the size of shallow nearshore zones in Hood Canal (Bax *et al.* 1978), and sublittoral[†] eelgrass beds have been considered to be the principal habitat used by juvenile chum salmon in Hood Canal (Simenstad *et al.* 1980). Shoreline and in-water construction, channelization, and other human actions along the shoreline degrade and destroy kelp and eelgrass beds, salt marshes, mud flats, and other nearshore habitats. Marine shoreline bulkheading and boat docks have impacted nearshore shallow habitat and riparian vegetation along Hood Canal.

Strait of Juan de Fuca Foraging, Migration, and Overwintering

Habitat. Impacts from development in tributaries to the Strait of Juan de Fuca have resulted in significant habitat loss for anadromous salmonids. Morse Creek, a smaller watershed between the Dungeness and Elwha Rivers, was a significant producer of several species of salmon. As discussed earlier, anadromous salmonids provide an important seasonal prey base for bull trout. The Morse Creek channel has been altered by development, channelization, and forest practices. Floodplain function has been severely altered by constrictions resulting from diking, development encroachment, and transportation corridors. Historical estuary conditions, thought to be in large part responsible for Morse Creek's productivity, have been basically eliminated by development; however, Morse Creek habitat within the Olympic National Park boundary is in excellent condition (WSCC 2000a). Habitat outside of Olympic National Park has been significantly impacted by suburban development.

Siebert and Ennis Creeks also drain directly to the Strait of Juan de Fuca. The lower portions of these streams are relatively intact, but habitat in upper portions are adversely affected by recent rural development, agricultural practices, and forest practices. The marine shoreline is armored from the mouth of Morse Creek west through Port Angeles to the end of Ediz Hook at the mouth of the Elwha River. This armoring effectively eliminates most, if not all, natural

nearshore habitat function (WSCC 2000a). The nearshore environment provides important habitat for bull trout prey species, including spawning surf smelt, herring, and salmon smolts.

Streams that have their headwaters in the foothills, such as Bell and Siebert Creeks (and other streams draining into the Strait of Juan de Fuca) are subject to hydrologic/stormwater effects as a result of the permanent loss of forest cover due to conversion to residential development and from forestry activities. During severe rain storms or rain-on-snow events this has resulted in increased erosion in the small headwater streams as well as increased stream power to transport sediment and erode streambanks lower in the system (WSCC 2000a).

Fisheries Management

Overview. All core areas in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit have experienced both current and historical impacts to bull trout from fisheries management. The Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team identified incidental mortality to bull trout associated with recreational and Tribal harvest of other salmonids as both historically and currently one of the most important factors causing the decline in abundance of bull trout. In the 1992 Draft Bull Trout/Dolly Varden Management and Recovery Plan, the Washington Department of Wildlife identified increased fishing pressure as a major contributor to char mortality (WDW 1992). Recreational and Tribal salmon and steelhead fishing are likely still significantly impacting bull trout in coastal rivers. Other fisheries management activities that have both long-term historical and current impacts on bull trout populations include fish stocking, hatchery operations, and, indirectly, other fisheries management that affects the bull trout prey base (*e.g.*, baitfish and salmon).

The piscivorous diet of anadromous, fluvial, and adfluvial bull trout makes them susceptible to fluctuations in the densities of other fish populations. Ratliff and Howell (1992) found that abundance of bull trout in several watersheds declined as salmon declined. Several stocks of salmon have been listed as threatened under the Endangered Species Act in streams on the Olympic Peninsula. Historically, these rivers sustained much larger populations of anadromous fish. There are numerous current programs and management actions

underway to recover listed and depressed anadromous salmon stocks. These actions will assist bull trout recovery by increasing prey abundance.

Recreational Fisheries (Factor B). Historically, size and bag limits for recreational sport fishing seasons on the Olympic Peninsula were the same for trout and char. Because Dolly Varden and bull trout are difficult to distinguish from each other in the field, the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife manages the two species as “native char.” Seasons and limits for “native char” within Olympic National Park were also essentially the same as surrounding State-managed waters until recent years. The Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife and Olympic National Park closed all rivers on the Olympic Peninsula to fishing for Dolly Varden/bull trout in 1994. Tribal waters on the Queets River, Quinault River, and Lake Quinault remained open until 1999. Prior to 1994, recreational seasons for char in the lower mainstem areas of the larger rivers were open from 9 to 11 months of the year and for just over 5 months, from late May through October, in the upper reaches and most tributaries. Generalized limits on char in most waters of the Olympic Peninsula included:

<u>Years</u>	<u>Limits on char caught in Olympic Peninsula</u>
1965–1970	12 trout and char with total weight restrictions
1971–1980	8 trout and char with total weight restrictions
1981–1991	8 trout and char with length restrictions
1992–1993	2 char, at least 20 inches or more
1994–present	Closed to fishing for char

The impacts of these seasons and limits on bull trout populations are largely unknown, as char were not the target of most recreational anglers and were only caught incidentally to salmon, steelhead, and trout. However, based on our current understanding of the age and growth of bull trout on the Olympic Peninsula, the historical regulations were probably too liberal. Since bull trout are long-lived, grow slowly, and mature later than trout, past size and bag limits may have contributed to their decline. The management approach currently in use by a number of fish and wildlife management agencies sets bag limits based on spawner/recruitment relationships for the target species. Where these data are lacking, conservative bag limits are adopted in combination with a minimum size that corresponds with the size at maturity, theoretically allowing fish to spawn at least once before becoming vulnerable to harvest.

In some instances, where anglers targeted bull trout, recreational fishing appears to have had some significant impacts on population size and viability. The char in Lake Cushman and the North Fork Skokomish River were widely recognized for producing large trophy-sized individuals, some of which exceeded 4.5 kilograms (10 pounds) (McLeod 1944). Anglers targeted these fish in Lake Cushman and on the fall spawning migration in the North Fork Skokomish River. It is widely believed that the recreational fishery in the reservoir and North Fork Skokomish River was primarily responsible for a significant decline in the spawning escapement[†] from 1972 to 1980 (Figure 9), although operation of the Tacoma Power hydropower projects has also impacted all fish populations in the Skokomish watershed. During the period of decline, the limit on trout and char in the North Fork Skokomish River upstream from Lake Cushman was eight fish or 2.7 kilograms (6 pounds) total plus one fish. Beginning in 1980, all fishing in the North Fork Skokomish River was closed during bull trout migration and spawning (the Olympic National Park boundary to Dolly Pool), and in 1982 the area was closed to all fishing for char. In 1986, harvest of char in Lake Cushman was closed (WDFW 1998). These restrictions appear to have resulted in a delayed (6 years), although short-term (10 years), recovery of the North Fork Skokomish bull trout population (Figure 9). Determining the cause of the more recent decline of this population is a high priority research need for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

The 1994 fishing closures likely had a positive influence on the abundance of this species within the Olympic Peninsula and throughout Washington in general. It is assumed that bull trout mortalities associated with incidental catch during other recreational fisheries since 1994 has been much lower than when bull trout were targeted for harvest. However, very little is known about the extent of incidental mortalities of bull trout associated with recreational fisheries of salmon and steelhead stocks on the Olympic Peninsula. Currently, there is very limited monitoring of Olympic Peninsula recreational fisheries and incidental number of bull trout caught and released (Appendix 1).

For recreational fisheries the incidental catch of bull trout usually occurs during general “trout” and salmon fisheries and, in particular, during the early portion of winter steelhead fisheries. As more restrictive salmon fishing regulations have been adopted for Puget Sound rivers, salmon sport fishing effort

on coastal rivers, such as the Hoh and Queets Rivers, has steadily increased (B. Freymond, pers. comm. 2003). Increased fishing pressure can become a major contributor to bull trout mortality (Brown 1994).

Incidental hooking of bull trout has been documented in major coastal rivers. Bull trout are apex predators and are especially susceptible to incidental hooking during other targeted fisheries. In fact, biologists have found hook-and-line fishing to be one of the most successful tools for population sampling of bull trout (Brown 1994). For salmonids in general, incidental hooking mortality varies from less than 5 percent to 24 percent for fish caught on artificial lures, and between 16 percent and 58 percent for bait-caught fish (Taylor and White 1992; Pauley and Thomas 1993; Lee and Bergersen 1996; Schill 1996; Schill and Scarpella 1997). During the mid- to late-summer period of staging, bull trout pre-spawning aggregations are especially susceptible to this incidental hooking (Brown 1994). In the Skokomish core area the consequences of continued Chinook salmon harvest in Lake Cushman, and the incidental catch of bull trout associated with that harvest, may significantly impact the low number of both Chinook salmon and bull trout in Lake Cushman and the Upper North Fork Skokomish River (Young, *in litt.* 2003).

Tribal Fisheries (Factor B). Bull trout are susceptible to incidental mortality associated with gill-net fisheries that target salmon and steelhead at the mouths of the Dungeness, Elwha, Hoh, Queets, and Quinault Rivers. Currently there is no monitoring of bull trout bycatch[†] in the gill-net fisheries. The extent and seasonal variation of mortality remains unknown in each river, but it is believed to be a significant contributor to mortality of bull trout in several Olympic Peninsula rivers. It is likely that gill-net fisheries are size-selective for large adult bull trout based on the mesh sizes used in each river. In 2002, biologists obtained 108 adult bull trout specimens incidentally captured in net fisheries occurring from January to June 2002 in an Olympic Peninsula coastal river (Brenkman and Corbett, *in litt.* 2003a). These bull trout, ranging in size from 290 to 760 millimeters (11 to 30 inches) with an average size of 580 millimeters (23 inches), were captured in winter steelhead fisheries (net mesh size 10 to 15 centimeters [4 to 6 inches]) and spring and summer Chinook salmon fisheries.

Many of the unique life history attributes of bull trout increase their susceptibility to capture in gill-net fisheries in these coastal rivers. The highly migratory behavior of bull trout, coupled with their longevity and ability to repeat spawn, increases the number of possible encounters with nets located at river mouths. Capture may occur during upstream or downstream movements to and from saltwater habitats. Relative gill-netting effort at river mouths or estuaries varies from river to river (Table 4).

Table 4. Relative gill-netting effort at river mouths or estuaries with gill-net fisheries based on available data.

River System	Fishery	Days Open ¹	Time Span	Contact
Dungeness	Coho salmon	42	09/15/02 to 11/07/02	Jamestown S'Klallam Tribe
	Steelhead	32	12/01/02 to 01/30/03	
Quinault	Winter steelhead	90 ²	11/04/02 to 05/04/03	K. Hughes, WDFW, and the Quinault Indian Nation
	Sockeye salmon	0	04/01/02 to 06/30/02	
	Summer Chinook	14	07/01/02 to 07/31/02	
	Fall Chinook	22	08/01/02 to 09/05/02	
	Fall coho salmon	30	06/16/02 to 10/31/02	
Skokomish	Chinook salmon	32	08/04/02 to 09/25/02	M. Ereth
	Chum salmon	15	11/17/02 to 12/07/02	
	Coho salmon	35	09/29/02 to 10/31/02	Skokomish Tribe
	Steelhead	6	12/23/02 to 02/15/03	
Hoh	Winter steelhead	35	12/03/01 to 04/01/02	B. Freymond, WDFW, and the Hoh Tribe
	Spring Chinook salmon	17	05/06/02 to 08/26/02	
	Fall coho salmon	39	09/01/02 to 01/21/02	
Queets	Winter steelhead	40	11/24/02 to 04/26/03	B. Freymond, WDFW, and the Quinault Indian Nation
	Fall steelhead	45	09/01/02 to 11/23/02	
	Summer Chinook salmon	1	05/06/01 to 08/25/01	
Humptulips	Fall steelhead	9	09/15/01 to 10/14/01	K. Hughes, and the Quinault Indian Nation
	Winter steelhead	23	12/01/01 to 12/30/01	
Elwha	Fall coho salmon	24	09/19/02 to 11/17/02	D. Morrill
	Winter steelhead	40	12/28/02 to 02/15/03	

¹ 1 day = 24 hour continuous period.

² Tribal gill-net fishery occurs in lower 13 kilometers (8 miles) of the river.

Nonnative species (Factor E). Nonnative fish stocking may negatively impact bull trout through competition and/or predation. Brook trout pose an additional threat to bull trout through the potential for hybridization (Markle 1992). Both the Dungeness and Elwha River basins were identified by Mongillo and Hallock (1993) as having fairly extensive brook trout populations. However, brook trout stocking has primarily occurred in high lakes, and the recovery team determined the extent of impacts to bull trout from this high lake stocking is largely unknown on the Olympic Peninsula. One area of concern is the South Fork Skokomish River where a bull trout × brook trout hybrid was captured (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003a).

Hatcheries (Factor E). All of the core areas have hatchery releases of at least one species of anadromous salmon, steelhead, or cutthroat trout. Interaction between bull trout and these hatchery fish has not been examined. Although bull trout evolved with and continue to coexist with anadromous salmon, steelhead, and cutthroat trout, hatchery releases of certain salmonids may impose predation and competition pressures on bull trout above natural levels. In Lake Cushman in the Skokomish core area, 3.3 million rainbow trout were planted from 1935 to 1986, 31 million Kokanee salmon were planted from 1936 to 2001, and 3.6 million cutthroat trout were planted from 1952 to 2001. While these releases may provide an enhanced prey base for bull trout, they likely also impose predation and competition pressures. Further hatchery planting of fall-spawning salmonids is being considered for Lake Cushman. This has the potential to impact the already limited spawning habitat available to bull trout in the North Fork Skokomish River upstream from Lake Cushman. Other potential impacts from hatcheries include diversions of water, unscreened ditches, barriers, hatchery effluent discharge, low dissolved oxygen, and disease control chemicals.

In the Quinault core area, operations at the Quinault National Fish Hatchery divert approximately 10 to 50 percent of the flow from the channel, depending on the season. The electronic weir at the hatchery currently impedes migration to 54 kilometers (33 miles) of anadromous fish habitat and precludes use of most of the watershed by bull trout. Discussions are underway to address this issue and facilitate upstream passage of bull trout from May to mid-September. Although the risk is relatively small, bull trout may be trapped upstream from the weir if they use the bypass channel[†] or move upstream when

the current is turned off. Adult or subadult bull trout that attempt to move through the electric field may be injured or killed, while those entering the fish handling facility may be harmed.

In the Dungeness core area, the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife hatchery fish collection rack blocks migration of fish at certain times of the year. In addition, a poorly screened hatchery water intake is a complete barrier to upstream fish passage in Canyon Creek (WSCC 2003). The Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife currently has funds allotted to engineer and construct modifications to the dam for fish passage, or to restore physical and biological processes by removal of the dam (WSCC 2003).

Forage (Prey) Base (Factor E). Bull trout migrations and life history strategies are closely related to their feeding and foraging strategies. In the Pacific Northwest, these strategies were historically connected with, and most likely dependent upon, healthy salmon populations (Baxter and Torgersen, *in litt.* 2003; Armstrong and Morrow 1980; Brown 1994; Nelson and Caverhill 1999). Food resources provided by salmon include dislodged eggs, emergent and migrating fry, smolts, and flesh from decomposing carcasses. Recent studies have documented low abundances and declines of Pacific salmon throughout much of their range (NMFS 1991; Washington Department of Fisheries *et al.* 1993). In 1991, the American Fisheries Society published a list of 214 naturally spawning stocks of salmon, steelhead, and cutthroat trout from California, Oregon, Idaho, and Washington, including 101 stocks at high risk of extinction, 58 stocks at moderate risk of extinction, 54 stocks of special concern, and one stock classified as threatened under the Endangered Species Act (Nehlsen *et al.* 1991). Vigorous populations of migratory bull trout require abundant fish forage, and it is likely that many bull trout populations have been affected by the documented declines in salmon populations. For example, in several river basins where bull trout evolved with large populations of juvenile salmon, bull trout abundance declined when salmon declined (Ratliff and Howell 1992; Rieman and McIntyre 1993). The declines of salmon and steelhead are the result of a number of factors including habitat loss and migration barriers as well as fisheries management.

Overall, current salmon and steelhead populations are estimated to be at half of historical levels, even with hatchery production. Native stocks of concern include sea-run cutthroat (*Onchorynchus clarki clarki*) and sockeye salmon. Adult returns of sockeye salmon in particular have declined significantly over the past century. In Lake Quinault, the sockeye population has declined from around 251,000 in 1917 to just under 53,000 returning adults in 1999. The steady drop in population and loss of carcasses from spawned-out fish has resulted in a decline in the nutrient and zooplankton (microscopic animals floating in the water that are used for food by nearly all aquatic animals) levels in the lake (Quinault Indian Nation and USDA 1999). Artificial nutrient enhancement to increase sockeye salmon production is being considered for the lake. Impacts to bull trout or prey species from this type of enhancement are unknown.

Habitat (Factor A). From the 1950's to 1970's fisheries managers promoted the removal of large woody debris and logjams from streams because they were believed to hinder fish migration (Murphy 1995). This practice eliminated or greatly reduced the habitat complexity in many streams. Although removal of wood from streams has been discontinued, legacy effects are still apparent throughout streams on the Olympic Peninsula.

Habitat Fragmentation and Isolation (Factor A)

The Salmon and Steelhead Habitat Limiting Factors Resource Inventory (WSCC 1999; 2000a,b; 2001) identifies numerous impassible barriers to migratory fish in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Improperly installed or sized and failed culverts have been identified as barriers to fish movement and migration throughout the Olympic Peninsula (see the “Forest Management” and “Transportation Networks” sections). In the Hoh core area, historical cedar salvage practices have resulted in a legacy of cedar spalt debris forming impassable barriers in coastal rivers and streams. In the Dungeness core area construction of flood control structures, water diversion structures, and irrigation withdrawals resulting in barriers, higher temperatures, and low flows have also contributed to the degradation and fragmentation of migratory corridors.

Tribes in Washington are currently involved in a lawsuit against the State of Washington regarding improperly functioning culverts. Depending on the

resolution of this case, there could be benefits to migratory bull trout if culverts currently impacting passage for bull trout are included as culverts prioritized for correction.

In the Hoh, Skokomish, Quinault, and Dungeness core areas, migratory corridors have been altered through physical reductions of stream channel depths and reductions of cover habitat along with flow regime alterations in the mid- to lower subbasins. Large woody debris recruitment from adjacent riparian reserve zones has declined due to human activity related to timber harvest and road construction, along with woody debris removal from lower subbasin stream channels. Reduced amounts of large woody debris instream has minimized holding and rearing areas for adult bull trout during spawning migration and for juveniles during rearing movements among different stream reaches.

The construction and operation of dams has contributed to habitat fragmentation and isolation of bull trout in the Elwha and Skokomish core areas. These dams lack sufficient passage and are barriers to upstream migrants. Impacts from these dams are covered in “Dams” under “Reasons For Decline.”

The hatchery diversion and electronic weir at the Cook Creek National Fish Hatchery have been identified as blocking migration and limiting bull trout use of the upper watershed. At the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife Dungeness River Hatchery, the adult salmon collection rack across the Dungeness at river mile 10.8 clearly influences migratory fish use of the upper Dungeness and Gray Wolf drainages (WSCC 2001). The small hydroelectric dam on Elk Creek in the North Fork Skokomish River blocks bull trout access. There is potentially suitable spawning habitat in the inaccessible portions of these watersheds.

Disease (Factor C)

In 2003, Olympic National Park biologists observed bull trout in the Hoh River that appeared to have black spot disease (S. Corbett, pers. comm. 2004). Black spot disease is caused by an infestation of one or more species of trematode (Post 1987). The presence of black spot disease may cause mortality, particularly

when infestations are heavy. It is uncertain whether black spot disease may be a factor in the decline of bull trout in the Hoh River.

Reasons for Decline: Summary

A summary of the threats to bull trout (reasons for decline) in the six identified core areas of the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit are presented in Table 5; this summary is also presented in narrative form here.

Skokomish Core Area. Historically the Skokomish River produced the largest runs of salmon and steelhead in Hood Canal, most of which were produced in the North Fork Skokomish River. Major impacts to the watershed have resulted from it being primarily managed for hydropower production, timber, and agriculture (WSCC 2003). Rural development has accompanied or followed conversion of agricultural lands and has also impacted aquatic habitat. Alterations to aquatic habitat in the mainstem and South Fork Skokomish River from forestry, roads, agriculture, and rural development include increased sediment, channel aggradation, altered flows, loss of woody debris, and elevated stream temperatures. The South Fork Skokomish River watershed has some of the highest road densities found west of the Cascade Mountains in Washington.

Cushman Dams 1 and 2 on the North Fork Skokomish River were constructed without fish passage and have eliminated connectivity of fish upstream from the dams with habitat and fish in the lower North Fork Skokomish River, the mainstem Skokomish River, the South Fork Skokomish River, and Hood Canal. Lack of, or greatly reduced, flows in the North Fork Skokomish River resulting from diversion of water to a power canal have reduced sediment transport capabilities, resulting in further aggradation of the river. Channelizing and diking for agriculture and residential development have further contributed to sediment accumulation. Incidental mortality to migrating bull trout from Tribal gill-net fisheries has been documented in a coastal river (Brenkman, *in litt.* 2003a) and incidental mortality from other targeted fisheries (both recreational and Tribal) likely also pose a threat to bull trout in the North Fork Skokomish River due to the low numbers of adult fish observed over the past several years.

Dungeness Core Area. Roads, forestry, agriculture, fisheries management, and residential and urban development all pose significant threats to bull trout populations. In the upper Dungeness River watershed, forest roads are thought to be one of the most important causes of habitat degradation due to the inherently unstable geology and steep slopes found within the core area. The road network has increased mass wasting and sediment delivery to streams. Forestry has permanently modified much of the lower watershed, which is now primarily used for farms and homes. Water rights are overappropriated in the Dungeness River and water diversions have altered stream flows, resulting in elevated water temperatures, seasonal migration barriers, and false attractions of bull trout to other streams. Increased storm water from urban and residential development and agricultural practices, including direct animal access to waterways and irrigation diversions, also impact water quality in the Dungeness core area. Incidental mortalities to bull trout from Tribal and recreational fishing are likely impacting bull trout.

Elwha Core Area. Most major threats to the Elwha core area are related to the Elwha and Glines Canyon Dams, which are scheduled for removal in 2007. The two dams have blocked fish migration for nearly 100 years and have eliminated the anadromous life history form from all of the Elwha above the Elwha Dam. The dams have also prevented salmon migration, resulting in the loss of nutrient enrichment from salmon carcasses as well as decreased prey base for most of the river. Further impacts from the dams include elevated water temperatures, loss of spawning gravel recruitment downstream from the dams, and estuarine shoreline erosions resulting from lack of fluvially transported sediment. Other threats to bull trout habitat in the Elwha core area include floodplain modification from dikes and levees built for rural and industrial development and sedimentation from forest practices in Little River, a potential local population. Incidental mortalities to bull trout from Tribal salmon and steelhead gill-net fisheries are likely impacting bull trout.

Hoh Core Area. Timber harvest, extensive road networks, and incidental mortalities to bull trout from Tribal fisheries are significant threats to bull trout populations in this core area. The middle Hoh River and its tributaries have been heavily logged, and many riparian forests have been logged to the stream bank, resulting in elevated stream temperatures and loss of large instream wood. Clear-

cut steep slopes within the Hoh River drainage have resulted in mass wasting and channelized landslides. In the Hoh River basin, roads often parallel the streams, acting as dikes and increasing sediment. The Upper Hoh Road has required extensive bank armoring, resulting in decreased stream complexity and disconnecting the stream from off-channel habitat. Incidental mortalities from Tribal salmon and steelhead gill-net fisheries impact migratory bull trout (Brenkman, *in litt.* 2003a).

Queets Core Area. Although the mainstem Queets River is almost entirely within Olympic National Park, significant threats to aquatic habitat in major tributaries of this core area include sedimentation and elevated temperatures from logging and associated road networks. Timber harvest activities occur throughout the Clearwater, Sams, and Salmon Rivers and Matheny Creek, resulting in varying degrees of impacts on the aquatic health of these rivers and associated streams. Road densities in the Clearwater River basin are high, and roads throughout the Queets River basin have been identified as having high potential for mass wasting and needing repair. Gill-net fisheries have been documented to impact anadromous bull trout in an adjacent coastal river, and because fisheries activities and bull trout patterns of use are similar for the coastal rivers, incidental mortalities from Tribal salmon and steelhead gill-net fisheries likely impact migratory anadromous bull trout in the Queets River.

Quinault Core Area. Timber harvest, transportation networks, and potentially incidental mortality to bull trout from other targeted fisheries are the most significant threats to bull trout in this core area. Timber harvest and road construction impacts to bull trout, from both historical and continuing actions, occur in the lower watershed, including some harvest within the floodplain. Gill-net fisheries have been documented to impact anadromous bull trout in another coastal river, and because fisheries activities and bull trout patterns of use are similar for the coastal rivers, incidental mortalities from Tribal salmon and steelhead gill-net fisheries likely impact migratory anadromous bull trout in the Quinault River.

Table 5. Summary of reasons for decline of bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. (“●” indicates a major cause of decline; “○” indicates a relatively minor cause of decline.)

Core Area	Dams	Forest Management Practices	Agriculture	Transportation Networks	Residential and Urban Development	Fisheries Management	Habitat Fragmentation and Isolation
Skokomish	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Dungeness		●	●	●	●	●	○
Elwha	●	○			○	●	●
Hoh		●		●		●	○
Queets		●		●		●	
Quinault		●		●	○	●	

ONGOING CONSERVATION MEASURES

The overall recovery implementation strategy for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment is to integrate with ongoing Tribal, State, local, and Federal management and partnership efforts at the watershed or regional scales. This coordination will maximize the opportunity for complementary actions, eliminate redundancy, and make the best use of available resources for bull trout and salmon recovery.

State of Washington

Salmon Recovery Act. The Governor's office in Washington has developed a statewide strategy that describes how State agencies and local governments will work together to address habitat, harvest, hatcheries, and hydropower as they relate to recovery of listed species of salmonids (WGSRO 1999). The Salmon Recovery Act, passed in 1998 (Engrossed Substitute House Bill 2496), provides the structure for salmonid protection and recovery at the local level (counties, cities, and watershed groups).

The Salmon Recovery Act of 1998 directs the Washington State Conservation Commission, in consultation with local governments and treaty Tribes, to invite private, Federal, State, Tribal, and local government personnel with appropriate expertise to convene as a technical advisory group for each Water Resource Inventory Area (WRIA) of Washington State. Water Resource Inventory Areas are generally equivalent to the State's major watershed basins. The purpose of the technical advisory group is to develop a report identifying habitat limiting factors for salmonids. This report is based on a combination of existing watershed studies and knowledge of the technical advisory group participants. Limiting factors are defined as "conditions that limit the ability of habitat to fully sustain populations of salmon, including all species of the family Salmonidae." The bill further clarifies the definition by stating, "These factors are primarily fish passage barriers and degraded estuarine areas, riparian corridors, stream channels, and wetlands." It is important to note that the responsibilities given to the Washington State Conservation Commission do not constitute completing a full limiting factors analysis.

Salmon Recovery Funding Board. In 1999, the Washington State Legislature created and authorized the Salmon Recovery Funding Board (Board) to guide spending of funds targeted for salmon⁴ recovery activities and projects. The Board's mission is "to support salmon recovery by funding habitat protection and restoration projects and related programs and activities that produce sustainable and measurable benefit for the fish and their habitat." The primary role of the Board is to fund the best salmonid habitat projects and activities reflecting local priorities using the best available science to protect, preserve, restore, and enhance salmonid habitat and watershed functions. Under current funding policies, the Board will give the greatest preference to strategies and project lists benefitting salmonid populations listed under the Endangered Species Act.

Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. The Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife has developed a native char management plan that addresses both bull trout and Dolly Varden (WDFW 2000). The Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife no longer stocks brook trout in streams or lakes connected to bull trout waters. Fishing regulations prohibit harvest of bull trout on the Olympic Peninsula. The Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife is also currently involved in a mapping effort to update bull trout distribution data within Washington, including all known occurrences, spawning and rearing areas, and potential habitats. The salmon and steelhead inventory and assessment program is currently updating its database to include the entire State. The database consists of an inventory of stream reaches and associated habitat parameters important for the recovery of salmonid species, including bull trout. This database will provide critical baseline habitat and fish distribution information that can be used in a number of conservation efforts.

Harvest for bull trout has been significantly reduced across the species' range. Most recreational fisheries for bull trout in fresh and marine waters in the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment have been closed since 1994. As the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment begins to achieve its

⁴ The term was used broadly to include all species of salmon, trout, char, whitefish, and grayling.

recovery goal, we will coordinate with the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife and Tribes to determine the location and level of bull trout harvest that continues to support the population characteristics consistent with bull trout recovery.

The Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife's Hydraulic Project Approvals Program reviews and permits or denies projects that propose to use, obstruct, divert, or change streambeds or flows, or impact nearshore marine waters in Washington. Updates made within the program to help conserve bull trout and their habitat include revised rules and regulations for mineral prospecting and placer mining to reduce impacts to bull trout and bull trout habitat, revised approved work windows (periods of time for inwater work) that provide greater protection for bull trout life stages during spawning and incubation, and development of marine work windows that help protect important marine forage (prey) fish species for bull trout.

The Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, in conjunction with the Northwest Indian Fisheries Commission, have been using Ecosystem Diagnosis and Treatment (EDT) modeling for deriving recovery goals for Puget Sound Chinook salmon in terms of productivity, capacity, and diversity based on properly functioning conditions for habitat. The model is used to analyze environmental information and draw conclusions about the ecosystem as it relates to the life history of Chinook salmon, in this case. This approach compares existing conditions with a future condition where conditions are as good as they can theoretically be within the watershed. From this comparison, a "diagnosis" of factors that are preventing achievement of this future condition can be made, and potential actions to achieve goals can be identified. It is anticipated that many of the limiting habitat factors for Chinook salmon identified through this model will be equally or partially applicable to bull trout.

Washington Department of Ecology. The Washington Department of Ecology is involved in a number of programs and actions intended to help provide greater conservation for bull trout and other salmonids by reducing habitat impacts. These include updating the State's Stormwater Management Manual for construction and development, updating State Shoreline Management regulations, updating the State's Water Quality Standards, and developing and implementing

water cleanup plans, or TMDLs (total maximum daily loads) for impaired waterbodies.

Shoreline Management Act. The goal of the Shoreline Management Act (Revised Code of Washington [RCW] 90.58) is “to prevent the inherent harm in an uncoordinated and piecemeal development of the State’s shorelines.” This act establishes a balance of authority between local and State government. Cities and counties are the primary regulators but the State has authority to review local programs and permit decisions. The Shoreline Management Act gives preference to uses that:

- Protect the quality of water and the natural environment.
- Depend on proximity to the shoreline.
- Preserve and enhance public access or increase recreational opportunities for the public along shorelines.

The Shoreline Management Act also requires extra protection for management of “shorelines of statewide significance.” These shorelines include the Pacific Coast, Hood Canal, Strait of Juan de Fuca, and large rivers (those with a flow rate of 1,000 cubic feet per second or greater for rivers in western Washington) (WDOE 1999).

The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration’s Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management (OCRM) funds the Shoreline Management Act and is responsible for approving the guidelines and incorporating them into the federally approved Washington Coastal Zone Management Program. As part of the approval process, the Office of Ocean and Coastal Resource Management must comply with the Endangered Species Act, which requires consultation with us and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Fisheries.

Growth Management Act. The goal of the Growth Management Act is to prevent uncoordinated and unplanned growth that poses a "threat to the environment, sustainable economic development, and the health, safety, and high quality of life enjoyed by residents of this State" (RCW 36.70A.010). Under the Growth Management Act, the State provides broad public access to data and maps describing development opportunities and constraints. The Growth

Management Act is widely used as a framework for other State statutes and policies related to land-use practices, environmental protection, and sustainable development (Washington State Department of Community, Trade, and Economic Development, no date). The Growth Management Act requires all cities and counties in the State to:

- Designate and protect wetlands, frequently flooded areas, and other critical areas.
- Designate farm lands, forest lands and other natural resource areas.
- Determine that new residential subdivisions have appropriate provisions for public services and facilities.

Washington Department of Natural Resources. The Washington Department of Natural Resources manages State trust lands for terrestrial, riparian, aquatic, and special habitats under their habitat conservation plan, approved by us in 1997. On the western and northwestern side of the Olympic Peninsula, the Washington Department of Natural Resources manages State trust lands as the Olympic Experimental State Forest. The Olympic Experimental State Forest extends from the Queets River watershed in the south to the Pysht River watershed in the northern part of the Olympic Peninsula. The Goodman, Hoh, Quillayute, Ozette, Hoko, and Clallam watersheds are all within the Olympic Experimental State Forest.

In other areas on the Olympic Peninsula, outside of the Olympic Experimental State Forest, the Washington Department of Natural Resources manages State trust lands as they do elsewhere within the habitat conservation plan area. Bull trout are one of several species covered under this plan. The riparian conservation strategy for these lands has two conservation objectives: (1) maintain or restore salmonid freshwater habitat on Washington Department of Natural Resources managed lands, and (2) contribute to the conservation of other aquatic and riparian obligate species.

These two objectives will be achieved by the following activities along fish-bearing waters: (1) no timber harvest shall occur with the first 7.6 meters (25 feet) from the outer margin of the 100-year floodplain; (2) the next 23 meters (75 feet) of the buffer shall be a minimum harvest area; and (3) the area beyond 30

meters (100 feet) to approximately a site potential tree height from the active channel margin shall be a low harvest area. Maintaining natural levels of stream temperature, sediment load, detrital nutrient load, and instream large woody debris is the primary function of the buffer zone. There will be some timber harvest within this buffer zone that may include ecosystem restoration and the selective removal of single trees.

The Olympic Experimental State Forest is managed differently than other State trust lands because of its experimental nature and its integrated approach to management. The long-term vision for the Olympic Experimental State Forest is a commercial forest in which ecological health is maintained through the integration of forest production activities and conservation. One of the primary differences between Olympic Experimental State Forest management and that of other State trust lands is that the Olympic Experimental State Forest is considered to be an “unzoned forest” in which no special zones are set aside exclusively for either species conservation or commodity extraction.

The riparian conservation strategy for the Olympic Experimental State Forest is also unique from other State trust lands due to a higher propensity throughout the area for mass wasting events and windstorms that can cause considerable tree blowdown. Experimentation, research, and monitoring are also a primary emphasis of the Olympic Experimental State Forest. The Washington Department of Natural Resources’ objectives for lands within the Olympic Experimental State Forest include:

- Maintaining and aiding restoration of the composition, structure, and function of aquatic, riparian, and associated wetland systems that support aquatic species, populations, and communities.
- Maintaining and aiding restoration of the physical integrity of stream channels and floodplains.
- Maintaining and aiding restoration of water to the quantity, quality, and timing of disturbances with which these stream systems evolved (natural disturbance regime of these systems).
- Maintaining and aiding restoration of the sediment regime to the condition in which these systems evolved.

- Developing, using, and distributing information about aquatic, riparian, and associated wetland ecosystem processes and on their maintenance and restoration in commercial forests.

The riparian conservation strategy for the Olympic Experimental State Forest intends to meet the stated objectives by:

- Applying interior core buffers the same as those provided on streams outside the Olympic Experimental State Forest.
- Applying additional exterior wind buffers.
- Developing comprehensive road maintenance plans.
- Protecting forested wetlands and conducting a research and monitoring program integrated with on-the-ground riparian protection.

Timber harvest can occur within the interior and exterior buffers, provided that management activities are consistent with the conservation objectives and are appropriate for local landforms and meteorological conditions. The comprehensive road maintenance plans will emphasize minimizing road densities, maintaining existing roads, and other efforts to protect and restore aquatic organisms. Forested wetland management emphasizes retaining plant canopies and communities for maintenance of hydrological processes, minimizing disturbance to water flow patterns, and ensuring stand regeneration. The riparian conservation strategy is integrated with the research and monitoring strategy for the Olympic Experimental State Forest. All experiments performed in riparian areas will be carried out according to research protocols established for the Olympic Experimental State Forest.

Washington State Forest Practice Rules. In July 2001, the Washington Forest Practices Board adopted new permanent forest practice rules implementing the Forest and Fish Report (FFR 1999; Washington Forest Practices Board 2001). These rules address riparian areas, roads, steep slopes, and other elements affecting forest practices on non-Federal lands.

The Forest and Fish Report was the result of a document development process that relied on broad stakeholder involvement, including the U.S. Fish and

Wildlife Service, the National Marine Fisheries Service (now NOAA Fisheries), and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, as well as State agencies, Counties, Tribes, forest industry, and environmental groups. Prior to completion of the Forest and Fish Report, the environmental groups withdrew their support and participation in the process. The forest practices rules established new prescriptions to better conserve aquatic and riparian habitat for bull trout and other salmonids, and many provisions of the rules represent improvements over previous regulations. Because there is biological uncertainty associated with some of the prescriptions, the Forest and Fish Report relies on an adaptive management program for assurance that the new rules will meet the conservation needs of bull trout. Research and monitoring being conducted to address areas of uncertainty for bull trout include protocols for detection of bull trout, habitat suitability, forest management effects on groundwater, field methods or models to identify areas influenced by groundwater, and forest practices influencing coldwater temperatures.

Washington State Conservation Reserve Enhancement Program (CREP). The national Conservation Reserve Enhancement Program, implemented by the Natural Resources Conservation Service, dedicates \$250 million annually for restoration activities on agricultural lands in Washington State. Farmers and landowners receive reimbursements in the form of soil rental rates for taking land out of production to plant riparian buffers, fence livestock out of streams, and restore stream habitat. The Conservation Reserve Enhancement Program contracts are 10 to 15-year terms and restored riparian areas are often incorporated into conservation easements to provide permanent protection.

Federal Agencies

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Aside from the Endangered Species Act regulations and guidelines that apply to Federal actions (see Appendix 5), there have been several significant Federal efforts with specific implications for bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. We also have a number of national programs (*e.g.*, Private Stewardship Program, Cooperative Endangered Species Conservation Fund) that provide funds to projects restoring and conserving bull trout habitats.

We have negotiated two habitat conservation plans within the area of the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. The Washington Department of Natural Resources Habitat Conservation Plan is described previously, and the Simpson Timber Company Habitat Conservation Plan is described as follows: In 2000, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, the Environmental Protection Agency, and National Marine Fisheries Service assisted the Simpson Timber Company in completing a habitat conservation plan (plan). The plan addresses forest management and timber harvest across a 105,626-hectare (261,000-acre) landscape in three counties west of Shelton, Washington, on the Olympic Peninsula. The principal area of the plan overlaps bull trout distribution in the South Fork Skokomish River and the anadromous reaches of its major tributaries. The Plan's conservation measures emphasize protection and restoration of riparian forests through management prescriptions designed to address wetlands, unstable slopes, road construction, road maintenance and decommissioning, and certain harvest limitations to moderate snowmelt runoff. Riparian buffers prescribed on all stream types vary from 5 to 65 meters (16 to 312 feet) in width. Prescribed widths depend on channel class and geologic class designation, which take into account recruitment of woody debris into the channel. An active road management program controls or eliminates entry of sediments to watercourses within the plan area. The plan contains a research and monitoring component and a scientific committee of stakeholders. The scientific advisory team includes technical representatives from the Washington Department of Ecology; Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife; Washington Department of Natural Resources; the Quinault Indian Nation, Squaxin Island, Skokomish, and Chehalis Tribes, and the Point No Point Treaty Council; and the three Federal agencies. The group meets quarterly to review monitoring results and recommend management changes (Simpson Timber Company 2000).

Our Western Washington Fish and Wildlife Office also has a number of restoration programs (*e.g.*, Jobs in the Woods, Chehalis Fisheries Restoration Program, Puget Sound Coastal Program, and Partners for Fish and Wildlife) that provide funding and technical assistance for habitat restoration work in the Olympic Peninsula region. Many of the projects funded through these programs contribute to the recovery of bull trout through habitat enhancements or through the restoration of watershed processes and functions eliminated or impaired by land management activities. These programs also contribute to the restoration of

estuarine and nearshore habitats important to the recovery of bull trout and salmon.

Part of our contribution to the implementation of the Northwest Forest Plan (USDA and USDI 1994a,b) includes the Jobs in the Woods Watershed Restoration Program, started in 1994. Using guidance from the Northwest Forest Plan Aquatic Conservation Strategy, and the goal of maximizing ecological and economic benefits, the program developed a “focus watershed” approach in 1998. The program selects a limited number of focus watersheds. This approach allows the program to effectively use limited funding to focus restoration activities in key watersheds identified in the Northwest Forest Plan as containing habitat for potentially threatened species of anadromous salmonids or other potentially threatened fish.

We selected the Dungeness watershed as a focus watershed for the program in 2002, working with local partners in the Dungeness watershed to identify and provide future support to a variety of watershed restoration projects. The types of activities currently under discussion include an assessment and historical characterization of the landscape of the lower Dungeness River and estuary to help establish appropriate restoration goals and reestablish native species on approximately 36 hectares (90 acres) of estuarine, riparian and riparian-adjacent properties in that area. Future restoration activities could include reducing sedimentation from forest roads, enhancing instream habitat and fish passage, reestablishing riparian vegetation, or improving hydrologic regimes by breaching or removing dikes.

The Chehalis Fisheries Restoration Program developed partnerships with private landowners; fisheries groups; nonprofit organizations; and local, Tribal, and State agencies to implement 141 habitat restoration, watershed assessment, and public education projects. Projects have recently been completed in the Chehalis, Humptulips, Wynoochee, and Satsop River basins. Typical projects include removal of artificial barriers to fish migration, instream habitat enhancement, riparian fencing and native plant revegetation, road decommissioning and sediment control, habitat assessments, and outreach and education projects. In addition, funds are passed on each year to the Chehalis Tribe and Quinault Indian Nation for habitat restoration.

The Fisheries Restoration and Irrigation Mitigation Program provides funds for fish screening and for providing fish passage at water diversions. Industrial, municipal, and agricultural diversions are eligible for restoration and mitigation funding.

Our Western Washington Fish and Wildlife Office participates in the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission's hydroelectric project proceedings for both new projects and for projects requiring a new operating license. During the license proceedings, we provide the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission with recommended measures to protect and enhance fish and wildlife, including their habitat, that may include mandatory fish passage prescriptions. The recommended measures are transmitted through the Department of the Interior's response on the license application. During project relicensing, we have an opportunity to improve habitat that has been degraded by project operation by persuading the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission to include mitigative measures (*e.g.*, improved flows, sediment and large woody debris transport, etc.) as license conditions. A hydroelectric project operating license typically covers a period from 25 to 40 years.

U.S. Forest Service and the Northwest Forest Plan. Currently, the Northwest Forest Plan (USDA and USDI 1994a,b) guides timber management on U.S. Forest Service lands within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Benefits to aquatic and riparian habitat from the Northwest Forest Plan are evident throughout the Olympic Peninsula.

The Olympic National Forest initiated a process to identify forest roads that no longer serve a transportation need. The Olympic National Forest Road Management Strategy analysis identifies roads in need of maintenance and access, in part, by the adverse risk they may pose to the aquatic environment. For example, since 1994 the U.S. Forest Service and Simpson Timber Company have decommissioned over 386 kilometers (240 miles) of logging roads and restored 1,370 hectares (3,385 acres) within the South Fork Skokomish watershed.

On the Olympic National Forest, the South Fork Skokomish Watershed Analysis (USDA 1995a) identified this watershed as a priority for restoration. Since the 1995 watershed analysis, the Hood Canal Ranger District helped restore

and maintain the ecological health of the watershed and aquatic system. Some of these restoration actions include:

- 257 kilometers (160 miles) of road were decommissioned, and approximately 2,454 hectares (1,000 acres) of existing erosion features were stabilized using various soil bioengineering techniques.
- 133 kilometers (83 miles) of road and approximately 244,656 cubic meters (320,000 cubic yards) of soil, rock, and logging debris were removed from unstable landing and side-cast areas. After removing these materials, slopes were rounded back to their original contour and stabilized.
- 1,601 hectares (650 acres), comprising approximately 1,115 sites, were stabilized with various soil bioengineering techniques.
- During this time, over 750,370 native trees and shrubs were planted to provide long-term stability in excavated areas, and 300 hectares (750 acres) were hydromulched through helicopter and truck applications.

The U.S. Forest Service also conducts ongoing aquatic habitat monitoring and fish survey efforts, including radio telemetry projects on the Skokomish and Dungeness Rivers. These projects have helped to identify bull trout spawning sites and migrations.

Olympic National Park. Olympic National Park contains portions of every core area in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit within its boundaries. This largely undisturbed habitat provides important high quality spawning and rearing habitat for bull trout and other salmonids and protects some of the last undisturbed bull trout habitat in Washington. The park currently undertakes conservation, research, and restoration that will assist bull trout recovery on the Olympic Peninsula that includes:

- Restoring fish passage to pristine habitat through the planned removal of two hydroelectric dams on the Elwha River in 2007.
- Replacing culverts that currently block fish passage.
- Conducting extensive research designed to determine migratory patterns of bull trout and reduce incidental take[†] of fish migrating to Park waters.
- Monitoring bull trout populations to assist development of appropriate management and conservation strategies.
- Conducting inventories of fish populations throughout unsurveyed watersheds in Olympic National Park.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Growing public awareness and concern for controlling water pollution led to enactment of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act Amendments of 1972. As amended in 1977, this law became commonly known as the Clean Water Act. The Clean Water Act established the basic structure for regulating discharges of pollutants into the waters of the United States. This Act gave the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency the authority to implement pollution control programs such as setting wastewater standards for industry. The Clean Water Act also established requirements to set water quality standards for all contaminants in surface waters. This act made it unlawful for any person to discharge any pollutant from a point source into navigable waters, unless a permit was first obtained under its provisions. As a requirement of section 303(d) of the Clean Water Act, a list of impaired waters must be prepared by each state, and approved by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency for all waterbodies that do not fully support their beneficial uses (see, *e.g.*, Appendix 2). The Clean Water Act also funded the construction of sewage treatment plants under the construction grants program and recognized the need for planning to address the critical problems posed by nonpoint source pollution.

Under the Clean Water Act, the Environmental Protection Agency has approval authority over all State water quality standards. Because many Pacific

Northwest salmonid species are listed as threatened or endangered under the Endangered Species Act, the Environmental Protection Agency must consult with us and NOAA Fisheries to insure that State or Tribal water quality standards are not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of these listed fish. The Environmental Protection Agency has developed guidance to assist States and Tribes adopt temperature water quality standards that the Environmental Protection Agency can approve consistent with its obligations under the Clean Water Act and Endangered Species Act (USEPA 2003).

Natural Resources Conservation Service. The Natural Resources Conservation Service works to assist private landowners with conserving their soil, water, and other natural resources. Local, State, and Federal agencies and policymakers also rely on the expertise of the Natural Resources Conservation Service for technical assistance with best management practices. Most work is done with local partners. The Wildlife Habitats Incentives Program, Environmental Quality Incentives Program and other grants assist private landowner riparian habitat protection and management actions. The Environmental Quality Incentives Program is a voluntary conservation program for farmers and ranchers that promotes agricultural production and environmental quality as compatible national goals. The Wildlife Habitats Incentives Program is also a voluntary program aimed at working with people who want to develop and improve wildlife habitat (including aquatic areas) on private land.

The Natural Resources Conservation Service works in partnership with local conservation districts in the Olympic Peninsula. For example, the Clallam County Conservation District has provided funding and technical assistance for implementation of best management practices and numerous salmon restoration projects.

NOAA Fisheries. In March 1999, NOAA Fisheries listed the Puget Sound Chinook salmon and Hood Canal summer-run chum salmon Evolutionarily Significant Units as threatened under the Endangered Species Act (64 FR 14308). These two Evolutionarily Significant Units overlap the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of bull trout.

As part of the recovery planning process for Chinook salmon, NOAA Fisheries has issued guidance for the technical development of recovery plans (NMFS, *in litt.* 2000). The framework for salmon and steelhead recovery plan development is divided into distinct geographic areas, or domains, which may contain multiple evolutionarily significant units. Recovery plans for listed salmon and steelhead will contain the same basic elements as mandated by the Endangered Species Act: (1) objective, measurable criteria; (2) a description of site-specific management actions necessary to achieve recovery; and (3) estimates of the cost and time to carry out recovery actions.

In the Olympic Peninsula region, NOAA Fisheries is developing the Hood Canal summer-run chum and Puget Sound Chinook salmon recovery plan through a collaborative regional approach, the “Shared Strategy for Puget Sound” (Shared Strategy 2002). It is anticipated that many of the habitat recovery actions developed for summer-run chum salmon and Chinook salmon will provide conservation benefits to bull trout and in some cases possibly meet their conservation needs (*e.g.*, Chinook salmon recovery actions in mainstem river reaches). However, bull trout will require greater habitat protection and restoration measures in some locations due to their coldwater requirements, greater sensitivity to habitat degradation, and use of habitats outside of areas occupied by Chinook salmon. As a participant in the Shared Strategy effort, we will coordinate the implementation of the recovery actions identified in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit recovery plan with salmon measures to avoid duplication of effort and to maximize the use of available resources, as well as identify actions necessary for bull trout that are above and beyond what may be necessary for Chinook salmon recovery.

NOAA Olympic Coast National Marine Sanctuary. The Olympic Coast National Marine Sanctuary comprises over 2,500 square nautical miles (3,300 square miles) of ocean waters off Washington’s rugged and rocky Olympic Peninsula coastline. Sanctuary waters extend an average of 30 nautical miles (35 miles) offshore and span 117 nautical miles (135 miles) north to south, stretching from the United States/Canada international boundary to the Copalis River in Grays Harbor County, Washington. The sanctuary provides habitat for one of the most diverse marine mammal faunas in North America and is a critical link in the Pacific flyway. NOAA Fisheries manages the site, designated as a National

Marine Sanctuary in 1994, to protect its natural resources while encouraging compatible commercial and recreational uses. Major resource management issues include vessel traffic, spill prevention and response, water quality, and the ecological impact of fishing. Information about the extent of bull trout anadromy along the coast of the Olympic Peninsula is limited; however, Dolly Varden, a related char species, makes extensive migrations in marine waters. It is likely that the protections provided by the marine sanctuary will benefit anadromous bull trout.

Elwha River Ecosystem and Fisheries Restoration Act of 1992. The Elwha River Ecosystem and Fisheries Restoration Act of 1992 (Public Law 102-495) authorizes the Secretary of the Interior to acquire and remove the Elwha and Glines Canyon Hydroelectric Projects to fully restore the Elwha River ecosystem and native anadromous fisheries. The proposed action consists of the Department of the Interior's acquisition of the Elwha and Glines Canyon Hydroelectric Projects, the removal of both dams and related facilities, the operation of the hydroelectric facilities during the interim period prior to their removal, the restoration of anadromous fish runs, and the implementation of flood control and water supply mitigation measures.

The Olympic National Park, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, and Lower Elwha S'Klallam Tribe will collectively develop the anadromous fish restoration plan. The draft restoration plan relies on a combination of natural recolonization, transplantation of juvenile salmon in the upper basin, and importation of donor stocks if the native stock has been extirpated. No transplanting of bull trout is proposed.

Native American Tribal Activities

The Tribes within the Olympic Peninsula play an active role in conserving and restoring salmonids and their habitats. Their efforts include research, outmigration sampling, adult and juvenile surveys, habitat restoration, and biological and physical monitoring of salmonid watersheds. Most Tribal governments on the Olympic Peninsula have active natural resource or fisheries departments with technical staff working on collaborative projects with Federal, State, and local entities. A number of Olympic Peninsula Tribes participate in

ongoing collaborative regional recovery efforts, such as the Shared Strategy for Puget Sound (discussed below), and also in more localized watershed efforts, such as the Habitat Limiting Factors Analyses under State of Washington House Bill 2496.

Shared Strategy for Puget Sound

In October 1999, over 150 leaders on salmon issues from throughout the Puget Sound area gathered in Port Ludlow, Washington, to discuss the region's growing salmon crisis. At this meeting a group representing Tribes, Federal, State and local governments agreed to develop a Shared Strategy to facilitate a coordinated regional approach to salmonid recovery. The Strategy includes developing a collaborative recovery plan for the region that is guided by clear goals and meets the broad interests for salmon and bull trout in Puget Sound (including Hood Canal and the Strait of Juan de Fuca). The Strategy also includes establishing an organizational structure to link recovery efforts, completing a regional recovery plan and guiding its implementation, and identifying and supporting important ongoing near-term efforts to protect Puget Sound salmon and bull trout (Shared Strategy 2002). The Shared Strategy is an effort to engage local citizens, Tribes, technical experts, and policymakers to build a practical, cost-effective recovery plan endorsed by the people living and working in the watersheds of the Puget Sound region.

As an ongoing participant and partner in the Shared Strategy, we believe this effort can contribute to the successful implementation of many of the recovery actions identified in the Puget Sound Management Unit and Olympic Peninsula Management Unit recovery plans for bull trout. The watershed-based planning efforts under the Shared Strategy can help further develop and refine certain site-specific recovery actions identified for core areas in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

Hood Canal Coordinating Council

The Hood Canal Coordinating Council consists of a council of governments including representatives from Jefferson, Kitsap, and Mason Counties; Port Gamble S'Klallam and Skokomish Tribes; and State and Federal

Agencies. The Council was established in 1985 to improve regulatory decision making and policy review by providing a forum for discussion of regional water quality related issues affecting Hood Canal.

The Council adopted the following mission statements: “The Hood Canal Coordinating Council recognizes Hood Canal as a national treasure and will advocate for and implement locally appropriate actions to protect and enhance the Canal's special qualities” (adopted in 1992). “To assure the existence of wild salmon in Hood Canal for the next 150 years, the Hood Canal Coordinating Council will: understand the causes of the decline of salmon in the Canal; identify the values and choices to be made in the natural, economic, legal, social, and cultural environments of salmon; develop and choose appropriate responses; and implement actions to maintain natural populations of salmon stocks at self-sustaining levels for ceremonial, subsistence, recreational and commercial fisheries” (adopted in 1996).

In September 1998, the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife awarded the Hood Canal Coordinating Council a Salmon Recovery Lead Entity Grant to solicit salmon recovery projects from counties, cities, conservation districts, Tribes, environmental groups, business interests, landowners, citizens, volunteer groups, regional fish enhancement groups, and other habitat interests. The grant also facilitates the ranking of those projects into an overall prioritized list to be submitted to the State Salmon Recovery Funding Board for funding.

The Hood Canal Coordinating Council also developed a recovery strategy to guide selection and ranking of projects in Hood Canal and the eastern strait. It prioritizes geographic areas in the canal and eastern strait, the types of activities, and includes sequenced project lists for each of the 69 identified independent anadromous drainages in the area.

Dungeness River Agricultural Water Users Association

The Dungeness River Agricultural Water Users Association has worked cooperatively to improve management of their irrigation facilities and activities. Many projects were identified in the Comprehensive Irrigation Water Conservation Plan and by working with the Jamestown S’Klallam Tribe, the

Clallam County Conservation District, and others, irrigation consumption has been reduced by approximately one third in the last 5 years, conserving water for bull trout and salmon (Jamestown S'Klallam Tribe 2003).

STRATEGY FOR RECOVERY

Bull trout have specific ecological requirements and depend upon an interconnected network of complex habitats to support multiple life history forms and facilitate the potential for occasional dispersal between local populations to maintain gene flow and genetic variability. In order to effectively address the needs of this wide-ranging species and the varying threats it faces, as well as incorporate the needs and concerns of the various local interest groups involved in its recovery, we have subdivided the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment into two management units, the Puget Sound and the Olympic Peninsula. Within each management unit, recovery will be based on the concept of functional “core areas.” A core area represents the combination of both a core population (*i.e.*, one or more local populations of bull trout inhabiting a core habitat) and core habitat (*i.e.*, habitat that could supply all the necessary elements for the long-term security of bull trout, including for both spawning and rearing, as well as for foraging, migrating, and overwintering) and constitutes the basic unit upon which to gauge recovery.

Bull trout are widely distributed in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. The Olympic Peninsula recovery team identified 6 core areas, with a total of 10 local populations and 2 potential local populations distributed among them (Table 1). The number of local populations includes those stream complexes for which the presence of bull trout spawning and rearing is either known or has been determined through professional judgement as highly likely. As more bull trout distribution and abundance information is collected, the number of local populations identified will likely increase.

A “potential” local population may be defined as either a local population that likely exists but has not been adequately documented, or as a local population that does not currently exist but is likely to develop in the foreseeable future. The development of a local population is likely to occur if spawning and rearing habitat or connectivity is restored in that area or if bull trout recolonize or are

reintroduced in the area. In the Olympic Peninsula, the recovery team identified two areas that are not currently known to support a local population (due to habitat degradation or access barriers) but that have the potential to provide spawning and rearing habitat for bull trout. Each of these areas could support a local population in the future, following restoration of habitat and access, as the bull trout recover. These areas were identified as potential local populations. Potential local populations identified in this recovery plan are considered necessary for recovery.

Ensuring the long-term persistence of all extant local populations, especially those exhibiting the anadromous life history, is key to supporting self-sustaining core areas of bull trout within the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment. In the coterminous United States, anadromous bull trout are found only within this population segment. In addition to their unique life history, anadromous forms are important because they provide an opportunity for core populations to exchange genetic material and, hence, increase the diversity and stability of the overall distinct population segment. Presumably this diversity reduces the risk of extinction of the distinct population segment. Large anadromous bull trout also have higher fecundity than the resident and fluvial forms and use a greater diversity of spawning and foraging habitats, which further contributes to population diversity and lowers the risk of extinction. All migratory life history forms require intact spawning and rearing habitat connected to adequate foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat. For anadromous bull trout, these required habitats span the whole watershed, from headwater tributaries to the estuary and adjacent marine nearshore habitat, as well as freshwater systems outside their natal watershed.

Recovery Goals and Objectives

The goal of the bull trout recovery plan is to **ensure the ongoing long-term persistence of self-sustaining, complex, interacting groups of bull trout distributed across the species' native range so that the species can be delisted.** To achieve this goal, recovery objectives addressing distribution, abundance, habitat, and genetics were identified.

The recovery objectives for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit are as follows:

- Maintain the current distribution of bull trout, particularly anadromous forms, and restore migratory life history forms in some of the previously occupied areas within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.
- Maintain stable or increasing trends in abundance of bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.
- Restore and maintain suitable habitat conditions for all bull trout life history stages and strategies, with an emphasis on anadromy.
- Conserve genetic diversity and provide opportunity for genetic exchange to conserve migratory life history forms.

Rieman and McIntyre (1993) and Rieman and Allendorf (2001) evaluated the bull trout population numbers and habitat thresholds necessary for long-term viability of the species. They identified four key elements, and the characteristics of each of those elements, for consideration when evaluating the viability of bull trout populations. These four elements include: (1) the number of local populations; (2) adult abundance (defined as the number of spawning fish present in a core area in a given year); (3) productivity, or the reproductive rate of the population (as measured by population trend and variability); and, (4) connectivity (as represented by the presence of the migratory life history form and functional habitat). For each element, the Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team classified bull trout populations into relative risk categories based on the best available data and the professional judgement of the team.

The Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team also evaluated each of the above described elements under a potential recovered condition to produce recovery criteria. The evaluation of these elements under a recovered condition assumed the implementation of actions identified within this plan. The recovery targets for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit reflect: (1) the stated objectives for the management unit; (2) the evaluation of each population element under both

current and recovered conditions; and (3) consideration of current and recovered habitat characteristics within the management unit. These recovery targets are subject to refinement in the future as more detailed information on bull trout population dynamics becomes available. Given the limited information currently available for bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, both the level of adult abundance and the number of local populations needed to lessen the risk of extinction should be viewed as best estimates at this time.

This approach to developing recovery criteria acknowledges that the status of populations in some core areas may remain short of ideals described by conservation biology theory. Certain natural attributes or small patch size may limit some core areas, and these may always remain at a relatively high risk of extinction. Because of the limited data availability within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, the recovery team relied heavily on the professional judgement of its members.

Local Populations. Metapopulation theory is important to consider in bull trout recovery. A metapopulation is an interacting network of local populations with varying frequencies of migration and gene flow among them (Meffe and Carroll 1994). The distribution and interconnection of multiple local populations throughout a watershed provide a mechanism for spreading risk from random, naturally occurring events and allows for potential recolonization in the event of local extirpations. In part, the distribution of local populations in such a manner is an indicator of a functioning core area. Based in part on guidance from Rieman and McIntyre (1993), bull trout core areas with fewer than 5 local populations are at increased risk of local extirpation, core areas with between 5 and 10 local populations are at intermediate risk, and core areas with more than 10 interconnected local populations are at diminished risk.

Based on existing information and local expertise, the recovery team has identified two local populations in each of the Skokomish, Dungeness, Hoh, and Quinault core areas, and one local population was identified in each of the Queets and Elwha core areas. Based on the above guidance, bull trout in these core areas presently exist at an increased risk of adverse effects from random naturally occurring events; reducing this risk requires additional local populations. The present number of identified local populations is based on current information.

However, remote access, turbidity from glacial melt, and overlap of spawning time and location with other fall spawners make many of the likely bull trout spawning rivers and streams within the Olympic National Park extremely difficult to survey. The recovery team believes that increased survey efforts targeting bull trout will identify additional local populations within the management unit, and that this increased survey effort is a high priority recovery action.

Adult Abundance. The recovered abundance levels in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit were determined by considering theoretical estimates of effective population size[†], historical census information, and the professional judgement of recovery team members. In general terms, the effective population size is the functional size of the population, from a genetic standpoint, based on the numbers of individuals that successfully breed and the distribution of offsprings among individuals. The effective population size may be substantially smaller than the census population size. Effective population size is an important theoretical construct in conservation biology, since genetic variability may be lost from a population with high numbers of individuals if the effective population size is low (Kimura and Crow 1963; Franklin 1980). The concept of effective population size allows us to predict potential future losses of genetic variation within a population due to small population sizes and genetic drift (see Appendix 4).

For the purposes of recovery planning, we used the number of adult bull trout that successfully spawn annually as a measure of effective population size. Based on standardized theoretical equations (Crow and Kimura 1970), guidelines have been established for maintaining minimum effective population sizes for conservation purposes. Effective population sizes of greater than 50 adults are necessary to prevent inbreeding depression and a potential decrease in viability or reproductive fitness of a population (Franklin 1980). To minimize the loss of genetic variation due to genetic drift and to maintain constant genetic variance within a population, an effective population size of at least 500 is recommended (Franklin 1980; Soulé 1980; Lande 1988). Effective population sizes required to maintain long-term genetic variation that can serve as a reservoir for future adaptations in response to natural selection and changing environmental conditions are discussed in Appendix 4.

For bull trout, Rieman and Allendorf (2001) estimated the need for a minimum number of 50 to 100 spawners per year to minimize potential inbreeding effects within local populations. In addition, bull trout need a minimum population size of between 500 and 1,000 adults in a core area to minimize the deleterious effects of genetic drift.

For the purposes of bull trout recovery planning, abundance levels were conservatively evaluated at the local population and core area levels. Local populations containing fewer than 100 spawning adults per year were classified as at risk from inbreeding depression. Bull trout core areas containing fewer than 1,000 spawning adults per year were classified as at risk from genetic drift.

Detailed abundance estimates for most core areas in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit are currently not available due to limited and nonrepresentative data. Similarly, detailed abundance estimates are not available at the local population scale for any core area except the Skokomish core area. However, the recovery team has provided recovered abundance targets for each core area, based on available data sets, habitat considerations, the population guidance discussed above, and best professional judgement.

The recovery team estimated current abundance for the Skokomish core area at likely fewer than 500 adult fish present (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2001). Current estimated abundance is 60 adults in the South Fork Skokomish River (WSCC 2003) and approximately 100 adults in the North Fork Skokomish River (Brenkman *in litt.* 2003a). Based on the above guidance, the South Fork Skokomish River local population is at risk from inbreeding and the Skokomish core area is at an increased risk of genetic drift.

Based on the recovery team's professional judgement and expertise, and considering available habitat, there are likely to be at least 500 but fewer than 1,000 adult bull trout in each of the remaining core areas: Hoh, Dungeness, Elwha, Queets, and Quinault (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2003a). Although there are a few records of numbers of individuals or redds for isolated sections of the Queets, Dungeness, and Hoh Rivers, bull trout distribution tends to be patchy, and sufficient information is not available for a more precise estimate of abundance in any core area other than the Skokomish core area. The recovery

team identified expanded studies on bull trout abundance and spawning-site locations as a high priority research and implementation action necessary for recovery. Following the above guidance based on Rieman and Allendorf (2001), these core areas face risk from genetic drift. However, the recovery team believes that a more accurate evaluation of risk from genetic drift in the core areas will be possible with additional abundance information.

Abundance target levels. To develop a recovered abundance target for each core area, two factors were considered. The first factor was the minimum number of adult spawners in a core area needed to avoid the deleterious effects from genetic drift. The team selected the high value of 1,000 spawning adults from the suggested range of 500 to 1,000 spawning adults. In addition, the amount of available suitable habitat was also considered. The recovered abundance level for the Hoh, Queets, Quinault, Dungeness, and Elwha core areas was determined to be at least 1,000 adult spawners in each core area. Due to limited available habitat in the Skokomish core area, a recovered abundance level of 700 adult spawners was determined to be adequate for recovery. The recovery team emphasized that a more precise estimate of recovered abundance will be possible following availability of additional current abundance information.

The second factor considered in developing recovered abundance targets was the size of local populations needed to address inbreeding concerns. Based on the guidance presented above, the Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team chose to base local population abundance on the higher value of the 50 to 100 spawners needed to avoid inbreeding depression. The team acknowledges that this minimum abundance for local populations may need to be revised in order to buffer against random naturally occurring catastrophic events. Available information indicates that many, if not most, local populations can achieve this abundance, provided adequate habitat conditions are maintained or restored. The team acknowledged that some local populations may not be able to achieve this ideal minimum abundance, while others will likely reach much higher abundances due to natural differences in habitat capacity among the local populations. However, based on the population guidance and information from Rieman and Allendorf (2001), the team believed 100 spawners should be the current basis for setting recovered abundance targets for each local population in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

Recovered abundance in the Skokomish core area will be limited by available habitat and is estimated to be 700 adult spawners when the core area reaches its recovered potential. This increased abundance in the Skokomish core area from fewer than 200 to 700 spawning adults will reduce somewhat the risk of genetic drift due to small population size, although this core area may always be at moderate risk of extirpation. Recent work with population characteristics and empirical models indicates that small populations (*e.g.*, fewer than 100 spawning adults) may be prone to extinction if they are isolated (Rieman and McIntyre 1993; Dunham and Rieman 1999), and restoring connectivity between the two known local populations is key to reducing the risk of extinction in this core area.

Productivity. A stable or increasing population is a key criterion for recovery. Measures of the trend of a population (the tendency to increase, decrease, or remain stable) include population growth rate or productivity. Estimates of population growth rate (*i.e.*, productivity over the entire life cycle) that indicate a population is consistently failing to replace itself ($\lambda < 1.0$) also indicate an increased risk of extinction. Therefore, the reproductive rate should indicate that the population is replacing itself or growing ($\lambda \geq 1.0$) to be considered recovered.

Since estimates of the total population size are rarely available, the productivity or population growth rate is usually estimated from temporal trends in indices of abundance at a particular life stage. For example, redd counts are often used as an index of a spawning adult population. The direction and magnitude of a trend in the index can be used as a surrogate for the growth rate of the entire population. For instance, a downward trend in an abundance indicator may signal the need for increased protection, regardless of the actual size of the population. A population that is below recovered abundance levels, but that is moving toward recovery, would be expected to exhibit an increasing trend in the indicator.

The population growth rate is an indicator of probability of extinction. This probability cannot be measured directly, but it can be estimated as the consequence of the population growth rate and the variability in that rate. For a population to be considered viable, its natural productivity should be sufficient for the population to replace itself from generation to generation. Evaluations of

population status will also have to take into account uncertainty in estimates of population growth rate or productivity. For a population to contribute to recovery, its growth rate must indicate that the population is stable or increasing for a period of time. Only the North Fork Skokomish River local population has received long-term monitoring. Recent counts in this population demonstrate a declining trend from a peak of 412 adults in 1993 to 100 adults in 2002 (WDFW 1998; S. Brenkman, pers. comm. 2003c). Based on this information for the North Fork Skokomish River and the lack of adequate trend data in the South Fork Skokomish River, as well as in the Dungeness, Hoh, Queets, Quinault, and Elwha core areas, bull trout in all core areas in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit are considered at increased risk until sufficient information is collected to properly assess their productivity. As data are collected and population size more clearly documented, these numbers should be refined for application to recovery targets for this management unit.

Connectivity. The presence of the migratory life history form within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit was used as an indicator of the functional connectivity of the unit. If the migratory life form was absent, or if the migratory form was present but local populations lacked connectivity, the core area was considered to be at increased risk. If the migratory life form persists in at least some local populations, with partial ability to connect with other local populations, the core area was judged to be at intermediate risk. Finally, if the migratory life form was present in all or nearly all local populations, and had the ability to connect with other local populations, the core area was considered to be at diminished risk.

Migratory bull trout likely persist in most local populations in the Dungeness, Hoh, Queets, and Quinault core areas; these areas are therefore considered at a diminished risk. Migratory bull trout may persist in some local populations in the Skokomish and Elwha core areas. Dams, however, block connectivity between local populations within these core areas, and the core areas are considered at an intermediate risk. The low abundance of the migratory life history strategy limits the possibility for genetic exchange and local population reestablishment. In the Elwha core area both the Elwha and Glines Canyon Dams are scheduled for removal beginning in 2007. Removal of the dams will restore connectivity and likely result in restoration of the anadromous life history form as

well as increased abundance of bull trout. In the Skokomish core area implementation of the Federal Energy Commission license for the Cushman project is expected to result in the construction of trap and haul[†] fish passage facilities, which will restore connectivity between the lower and upper North Fork Skokomish River but will bypass and isolate Lake Kokanee and the section of river between it and Cushman Dam 1. Completion of these actions for the Elwha and Skokomish core areas will reduce the risk to these core areas from isolation and fragmentation.

Recovery Targets for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit

As noted in Part I of this plan, recovery and delisting can only occur at the level of the listed entity. Consideration of delisting will depend upon attainment of the recovery criteria for bull trout across their range within the coterminous United States, as currently listed, or at the level of the distinct population segment as a whole should that population segment be reconfirmed to meet the definition of a distinct population segment under a formal regulatory rulemaking process. For the purposes of recovery planning, we have defined recovery criteria for the delisting of the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment as currently delineated. Although this population segment has been divided into two management units, these units are not eligible to be considered separately for delisting (a management unit cannot be a listed entity). We have therefore set recovery targets for each of the management units within the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment. These recovery targets reflect the recovery criteria measurement parameters identified for the entire distinct population segment, and reflect our best estimation as to how the recovery criteria can be met, working on recovery at the level of the management unit. We recognize that different configurations may be feasible and we welcome suggestions on alternative targets which can achieve recovery at the level of the distinct population segment.

This recovery plan presents recovery targets for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit only; recovery targets for the Puget Sound Management Unit are presented separately in Volume I of the Draft Recovery Plan for the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment of Bull Trout. The recovery targets are itemized below, and are also presented in Table 6.

Recovery targets for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit:

- 1. Maintain or expand the current distribution of bull trout in the six identified core areas.** The 10 currently identified local populations (Skokomish (2), Dungeness (2), Elwha (1), Hoh (2), Quinault (2), Queets (1)) will be used as a measure of broadly distributed spawning and rearing habitat within these core areas. In addition, spawning distribution in the two potential local populations that are essential to recovery (one in the Skokomish core area, one in the Elwha) should be restored or confirmed.

The designation of local populations and potential local populations is based on survey data, available suitable habitat, and the professional judgement of Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team members. The recovery team acknowledges that 5 to 10 local populations in each core area may be needed to reduce risk from random naturally occurring catastrophic events (Rieman and McIntyre 1993). Furthermore, the team believes it is likely that additional local populations exist in core areas on the Olympic Peninsula. Surveys, additional population studies, and a better understanding of Olympic Peninsula bull trout fidelity to their natal streams will help identify additional local populations in this management unit.

For recovery to occur, the distribution of these 10 local populations currently distributed throughout the 6 core areas should be maintained or expanded while abundance is increased. Reconnecting fragmented habitat and restoring degraded habitat, as well as identifying new or previously undescribed local populations, should allow the distribution of bull trout to increase as recovery progresses.

The Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team also identified two potential local populations: Brown Creek in the Skokomish core area and Little River in the Elwha core area. Bull trout have been documented in these drainages, and habitat is considered adequate to support a local population once it is restored. These streams do not have adequate survey data and should be investigated to determine whether local populations (*i.e.* spawning and rearing) are currently present. The two potential local

Table 6. Summary of the recovery targets for bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

Core Areas	Number of Local and Potential Local Populations ¹	Core Area Minimum Adult Abundance	Trend in Abundance	Current Number of Known and Suspected Barriers to be Addressed
Skokomish	2 local populations 1 potential	700	stable to increasing	at least 2
Dungeness	2 local populations	1,000	stable to increasing	at least 1
Elwha	1 local populations 1 potential	1,000	stable to increasing	at least 2
Hoh	2 local populations	1,000	stable to increasing	at least 1
Quinault	2 local populations	1,000	stable to increasing	at least 1
Queets	1 local population	1,000	stable to increasing	
Total	10 local populations 2 potential	5,700	stable to increasing	at least 7 ²

¹ Local population numbers and estimated adult abundance were determined by the Olympic Peninsula Bull Trout Recovery Team (Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, *in litt.* 2001). These numbers may be revised when more information is available. For core areas where specific information is lacking, a local population may be represented by a single headwater tributary or complex of tributaries. Further genetic studies are needed to more accurately delineate local populations, quantify spawning-site fidelity, and straying rates. Increased survey effort may identify additional local populations within the management unit (Recovery Action 5.5.2).

² This number is based on known major barriers to bull trout movement. There are likely more barriers to bull trout movement that have not yet been identified (*i.e.*, specific culverts) that will be added to this list following completion of surveys and inventories.

populations were determined to be essential to bull trout recovery as they would help attain recovery objectives and management unit targets for distribution and abundance and improve connectivity within core areas.

2. **Achieve minimum estimated abundance of at least 5,700 adult spawners in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, including at least 1,000 spawning adults in each of the Dungeness, Elwha, Hoh, Queets, and Quinault core areas and at least 700 spawning adults in the Skokomish core area.** Estimates of the recovered abundance for bull trout in this management unit are based on a recommended minimum abundance of 1,000 adult spawners to reduce the likelihood of genetic drift (Rieman and Allendorf 2001) and the professional judgement of the recovery team. Estimates also included consideration of surveyed fish densities, habitats, and potential fish production after threats have been addressed. The recovery team acknowledges that the recommended abundance level of 1,000 spawning adults is based mainly on genetic considerations and may not account for other variables, such as population structure, necessary for the long-term persistence of viable populations. The recovered abundance level in the Skokomish core area will be limited by available habitat and is estimated to be 700 adult spawners when the core area reaches its recovered potential.

With the collection of more clearly documented population data, the numbers required for recovered abundance may be refined in the recovery target levels for each of the core areas. Abundance is expected to increase as recovery efforts provide for the expansion of spawning and juvenile rearing areas and the restoration of important migratory corridors. The recovered abundance estimates are based on the recovery team's estimates of restored productive capacities of identified and potential local populations.

3. **Restore adult bull trout to exhibit stable or increasing trends in abundance at or above the recovered abundance level within the core areas in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit based on 10 to 15 years (representing at least two bull trout generations) of monitoring data. (Note: generation time varies with demographic variables such**

as age at maturity, fecundity, frequency of spawning, and longevity, but typically falls in the range of 5 to 8 years for a single bull trout generation). Bull trout in core areas that are presently below their recovered abundance level will exhibit increasing trends, whereas bull trout in core areas that may already be at their recovered abundance level will exhibit stable trends. Because there is so little baseline information about bull trout productivity in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, the recovery team believes that it will require at least 15 years of monitoring to accurately determine a stable or increasing trend.

- 4. Restore connectivity by identifying and addressing specific existing and potential barriers to bull trout movement in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.** Connectivity criteria will be met when intact migratory corridors are present among all local populations within each core area, thus providing opportunity for genetic exchange and life history diversity. Several man-made barriers to bull trout migration exist within the management unit, and this recovery plan recommends actions to identify, assess, and reduce barriers to bull trout passage. Although achieving criteria 1 through 3 is expected to depend on providing passage at barriers (including barriers due to physical obstructions, unsuitable habitat, and water quality) throughout all core areas in the management unit, the intent of this criterion is to note specific barriers to address, or actions that must be performed to achieve recovery. Activities necessary to fulfill this criterion include addressing specific barriers to bull trout migration (Recovery Action 1.2.4) at Cushman Dams 1 and 2 (Skokomish core area); Elwha Dam and Glines Canyon Dam (Elwha core area); the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife Dungeness Fish Hatchery (Dungeness core area); and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Quinalt National Fish Hatchery (Quinalt core area).

The development of criteria and specific actions necessary for remaining connectivity needs will be implemented as the necessary information becomes available. Actions that will be needed following identification and assessment of specific problem areas include eliminating entrainment in diversions (Recovery Action 1.2.1), providing fish passage at diversions (Recovery Action 1.2.2), eliminating culvert

barriers (Recovery Action 1.2.3), and improving instream flows (Recovery Action 1.2.5). Substantial gains in reconnecting fragmented habitat may be achieved in the Skokomish, Dungeness, Queets, Quinault, and Hoh core areas by restoring passage over or around many of the barriers that are typically located on smaller streams, including road crossings, culverts, and water diversions.

The known barriers are listed above and in the Recovery Measures Narrative section of this plan, but many (*e.g.*, culverts) have not yet been identified or have not yet been addressed. However, they are collectively important to recovery. Actions to identify and assess barriers to bull trout passage are recommended in this recovery plan and appropriate actions must be implemented. A list of all such artificial barriers should be prepared in the first 5 years of implementation, and prioritized so that highest priority is directed towards providing access to potential spawning and rearing habitat in local populations, followed by providing access to additional foraging habitats. Substantial progress must be made in providing passage at a significant number of these sites to meet the bull trout recovery targets for connectivity.

Recovery targets for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit were established to assess whether recovery actions are resulting in the recovery of bull trout. The Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team expects that the recovery process will be dynamic and will be refined as more information becomes available.

Research Needs

Based on the best scientific information available, the Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team has identified recovery targets and actions necessary for recovery of bull trout within the management unit. However, the recovery team recognizes that uncertainties exist regarding bull trout population abundance, distribution, and actions needed to achieve recovery. The recovery team believes that if effective management and recovery are to occur, the recovery plan for the Olympic Peninsula should be viewed as a “living” document that will be updated as new information becomes available. The recovery team will rely on adaptive management to guide recovery implementation. Adaptive management is a

continuing process of planning, monitoring, evaluating management actions, and research. Adaptive management will involve a broad spectrum of user groups and will lay the framework for decision making relative to recovery implementation, and ultimately the possible revision of recovery targets in this management unit. As a part of this adaptive management approach, the recovery team has identified research needs that are essential within the management unit. The research needs are listed by priority and, where applicable, in order of sequence.

Impacts of Recreational and Tribal Fisheries on Bull Trout.

Additional information is needed regarding the extent of incidental mortality of bull trout in State recreational fisheries and Tribal fisheries. These fisheries tend to impact the largest fish, and core areas with popular recreational fisheries or important Tribal salmon fisheries may be experiencing significant incidental bull trout mortalities. Bull trout mortalities related to Tribal net fishery and/or recreational angling have been documented in the Skokomish and Hoh core areas (Ereth, *in litt.* 2003; Brenkman and Corbett, Olympic National Park, *in litt.* 2003a).

Monitoring of both fishing effort and catch is needed from a representative sample of rivers throughout the management unit area. Better estimates of bull trout catches are also needed throughout the year. Catch rates for bull trout may be highest during the summer months, but there is substantially more fishing effort on these rivers during the fall and winter salmon and steelhead fisheries.

It is unclear whether there is an impact by recreational anglers on bull trout spawning or staging. Many spawning areas are assumed to be high in Olympic Peninsula watersheds, and access may be difficult during the late fall and winter when conditions are poor for hiking. Staging and spawning areas and the timing of these events should be identified to determine what impact recreational fishing could have on bull trout staging and spawning.

Additional information is needed to assess hooking and handling mortality for bull trout caught and released. While there is considerable information in the literature regarding catch-and-release mortality for trout, there is very little

comparable data for char such as bull trout or Dolly Varden. Mortality rates for bull trout caught and released are needed by gear types (barbed versus barbless hooks, single versus treble hooks, and hook size), water temperatures, and bait versus artificial lures. Differences in handling stress and mortality are also needed for bull trout caught in lakes, especially those caught and released by trolling. Specific mortality rates are also needed by life stage (juveniles, prespawners, and postspawners).

Monitoring of Tribal gill-net impacts to bull trout is needed to determine the impact on bull trout populations. In addition, research is needed to develop alternative methods for salmon gill-net fisheries, such as adjusting net mesh sizes and/or duration and placement of nets, to minimize accidental capture and incidental mortality of bull trout.

Skokomish Core Area Research Needs. Since 1998, bull trout abundance trends in the North Fork Skokomish River local population during annual monitoring surveys have declined from a peak count of over 400 adults to a peak count of approximately 100 or fewer adults (WDFW 1998; S. Brenkman, pers. comm. 2003c). Bull trout abundance in the South Fork Skokomish River local population is estimated to be fewer than 100 adults. The bull trout in these two local populations represent the entire adult population in the Skokomish core area. Recent work with population characteristics and empirical models indicate smaller populations (*e.g.*, fewer than 100 spawning adults) may be prone to extirpation risk if they are isolated (Rieman and Allendorf 2001). The following are suggested research projects to provide information about the local populations in the North Fork Skokomish and South Fork Skokomish Rivers, and to more effectively identify management actions necessary for recovery of this high risk core area:

- Use genetic analyses to define the relationship of these two local populations to each other and to other core areas in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit and to identify potential bull trout transplant[†] source(s) for either local population should this be warranted in the future.

- Implement a mark-recapture study to obtain more precise population estimates of bull trout in both local populations (Brenkman, pers. comm. 2003b).
- In the North Fork Skokomish River: (1) determine the influence of current and future hatchery planting of cutthroat trout on bull trout; and (2) determine the influence on bull trout and their prey base of fluctuating lake levels and warm waters (due to reservoir operations) at the North Fork Skokomish River inlet to the lake.
- Assess habitat in tributaries to Lake Cushman and the North Fork Skokomish River for spawning suitability; monitor to determine use by bull trout, especially as abundance increases.
- Determine extent of the threat of hybridization of bull trout with brook trout in the South Fork Skokomish River.
- Use creel surveys or other methods to determine incidental catch and mortality of bull trout during the trout and salmon fisheries.

Distribution, Abundance, and Productivity in Core Areas. Identifying additional spawning and rearing locations for all core areas will be the first step in developing a monitoring and assessment program. Little is known about bull trout spawning and juvenile rearing sites within the Olympic Peninsula core areas. Additional baseline information needed for a monitoring and assessment program include migration timing, freshwater tributary residence time, frequency of spawning, prey consumption, mortality rates and causes, life history types, abundance estimates, and others. The development and application of models that assess extinction risk relative to abundance and distribution parameters are critical in refining recovery targets as the recovery process proceeds.

Locating bull trout spawning and juvenile rearing areas has been problematic on the Olympic Peninsula. Adult and juvenile bull trout are difficult to survey. Redd surveys are subject to temporal variability and observer error. Although Olympic National Park, Olympic National Forest, and the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife have made extensive efforts to locate bull trout spawning sites on the Olympic Peninsula, difficult access, poor water visibility, and the concurrent presence of other spawning salmonids (coho and Chinook salmon) have further confounded efforts to locate additional sites and local populations. The development of a predictive model of suitable habitat used by

juvenile and resident bull trout would help to more precisely define the area for surveys intended to detect new spawning or juvenile rearing sites. A suitable habitat model would also help prioritize areas for recovery efforts.

Bull trout spawning-site locations are related to the presence of adequate coldwater temperatures and often to areas with groundwater upwellings. Juvenile rearing is also limited by suitable water temperature regimes. The development of a model or protocol for determining potential surface water temperatures and groundwater exchange areas would be useful for locating spawning areas and for prioritizing areas for recovery efforts.

Representative spawning index reaches or other appropriate surrogates must be developed as a priority for all core areas to adequately monitor changes in adult abundance. Index reaches have only been established in the Skokomish and Hoh core areas.

Use of the lower watersheds on the Olympic Peninsula by bull trout for foraging, overwintering, and potentially for thermal refugia is poorly understood. Understanding the spatial and temporal use of lower river and tributary systems that are important for bull trout foraging and summer thermal refugia has been identified as a research need.

Marine, Estuarine, and Coastal River Use by Anadromous Bull Trout. Bull trout's complete use of these marine and estuarine waters, including habitat preferences (depth, salinity, substrate, etc.), range of migration, and foraging requirements, is poorly understood. A better understanding of migration patterns and foraging opportunities in the coastal river, nearshore, and estuarine habitat would enhance the identification of recovery opportunities and actions needed. Our current understanding of bull trout estuarine and marine use is based on limited observational data, ongoing research projects, and inferences drawn from work conducted on similar species outside the management unit (*e.g.* Dolly Varden). To adequately protect, conserve, and restore estuarine and marine habitats that can support bull trout, research is needed to determine the species' full range of habitat preferences (*e.g.*, depth, salinity, bottom types, foraging habitats). Available information indicates bull trout use primarily nearshore waters, however, this use may be biased due to the limitations of sampling in

deeper, more offshore locations. Based on a limited amount of diet analysis, we do know that in addition to juvenile salmonids, a number of small marine forage fish species are critical to bull trout in estuarine and marine waters (*i.e.*, surf smelt, sandlance, Pacific herring) (WDFW *et al.* 1997), making the protection of key forage fish habitats critical to the recovery of bull trout. It is critical to determine if there are other species, such as specific invertebrates or other estuarine and marine fish, that are also important forage items either in certain feeding areas or to particular bull trout life stages. It is also important to better understand the relationship between these essential prey resources and the habitats which support their production and distribution. The processes which build and sustain nearshore habitats are highly susceptible to human impacts, such as bulkheads and other shoreline armoring, which separate beaches from the bluffs which feed them. The protection of key forage fish habitats is essential to recovery of anadromous bull trout.

Currently, a portion of the migratory bull trout on the Olympic Peninsula appear to migrate into the Strait of San Juan de Fuca, the Pacific Ocean, and Grays Harbor to overwinter and feed, either within those areas or in adjacent coastal rivers and streams. Historically, bull trout also migrated into Hood Canal to overwinter and feed. The preliminary results of acoustic telemetry work in the Puget Sound (F. Goetz, pers. comm. 2002b) and the Hoh River (Brenkman and Corbett *in litt.* 2003a,b) indicate that bull trout from more than one river intermingle in nearshore marine and estuarine waters. The recovery team believes that coastal river, marine, and nearshore foraging and migration studies for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit should be coordinated with the Puget Sound Management Unit to provide a more complete understanding of anadromous bull trout habitat requirements. Hood Canal westside tributary rivers (Duckabush, Dosewallips, Hamma Hamma, etc.), and the Hoquiam River have been identified as areas with research needs to determine if and how they may be used by bull trout.

Population Structure Within Core Areas. The Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team recommends genetics studies to more precisely describe bull trout population structure in each core area. This information is essential for developing a more comprehensive understanding of bull trout interactions and population dynamics within the management unit. Additional information on

population structure would greatly assist in further refining or revising (confirming, splitting, or combining) the currently identified local populations and, potentially, the core areas themselves. A genetics study plan and a comprehensive and coordinated sampling effort within all identified local populations are necessary for acquiring this information.

Key Habitat Features Requiring Protection, Restoration and Enhancement. Additional research is needed to identify key habitat features and limiting factors with greater precision for bull trout in both freshwater and marine habitats to ensure that habitat protection, restoration, and enhancement activities address critical limiting factors. Priorities include identification of key groundwater sources, hyporheic areas[†], and other cold water refugia; better information on the rates and locations of exposure to and sublethal effects of various environmental contaminants; identification of required water temperature regimes in river reaches used for foraging and migration; and identification of key habitat features in migratory corridors and overwintering areas.

Monitoring and Assessment Program. This draft recovery plan is the first step in the planning process for bull trout recovery in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. The recovery team identified the need to develop a standardized monitoring and assessment program to more accurately describe the current status of bull trout within the management unit, as well as to identify sampling protocols to allow monitoring of recovery action effectiveness. We will take the lead in developing a comprehensive monitoring approach that will provide guidance and consistency in evaluating bull trout populations. Evaluating implementation and monitoring effectiveness of recommended actions will be an important component in the application of adaptive management in recovery implementation. Monitoring and evaluation of population levels and distribution will be an important component of any adaptive management approach.

Potential Use of Satsop River. The Satsop River is on the southern coastal margin of the species' range, and any bull trout in this region are likely the last remnants of their distribution in the Chehalis River watershed. Currently no core area exists for the entire Chehalis River basin. Water temperatures in the upper West Fork Satsop River and Canyon River are suitable for bull trout spawning and rearing (L. Ogg, pers. comm. 2003c). The Olympic Peninsula

Recovery Team believes that, with restoration, the Satsop River provides the highest likelihood of establishing a functioning core area within the Chehalis River basin. Bull trout in the Satsop River would be important in maintaining the full genetic diversity and evolutionary potential of the species. Although passive recolonization would likely take a long time, the recovery team believes that using hatcheries or supplementing populations are not needed and should not be considered for this management unit at this time.

Little is known about bull trout distribution in, and use of, the Chehalis River basin. Historically, large numbers of bull trout were found in the upper West Fork Satsop and Canyon Rivers (J. Webster, pers. comm. 2001). Surveys conducted by the Olympic National Forest in the West Fork Satsop River since 1997 have not detected bull trout in the system (L. Ogg, pers. comm. 2003b). However, bull trout have been recently observed in Grays Harbor (Jeanes *et al.* 2003). Although the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife reported a single juvenile char in 1997 (WDFW 1998), they now believe it likely escaped from a fish farm (J. Uehara, WDFW, *in litt.* 2002). Other rivers draining to either Grays Harbor or the Chehalis River that have recently documented bull trout include the Wishkah and Humptulips Rivers (N. Dachtler, *in litt.*; 2001; M. Ereth, *in litt.* 2002).

The West Satsop Watershed Analysis described fish habitat in the West Fork Satsop River as degraded (Weyerhaeuser and Simpson Timber Company 1995). Extensive road building and forest management resulting in reductions in pool frequency, reduction of in-channel large wood and large wood recruitment, elevated temperatures, gravel scour, and increased fine sediment inputs were cited as reasons for the “degraded” designation.

Minimum criteria to support local populations of local bull trout populations include adequate stream size, gradient, flow, groundwater contributions, temperature, pools and spawning substrate, and riparian cover. A determination of habitat adequacy within the West Fork Satsop River to meet these minimum criteria will require a stream inventory and analysis (feasibility study).

RECOVERY ACTIONS

Structure of the Recovery Actions Narrative

The recovery actions narrative consists of a hierarchical listing of actions needed to achieve the recovery of bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. The first tier entries represent general recovery actions under which specific (*e.g.*, second and third tier) actions appear as appropriate. Second tier entries represent general recovery actions under which more specific actions may appear. Second tier actions that do not include specific third tier actions are usually programmatic activities that are applicable across the species' range; they appear in *italic type*. These actions may or may not have third tier actions associated with them. Third tier entries are actions specific to the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. These third tier entries appear in the implementation schedule that follows this section and are identified in the narrative outline by three levels of numerals separated by periods (*e.g.*, 2.1.1).

The Olympic Peninsula Management Unit recovery plan for bull trout should be updated or revised as recovery actions are accomplished, as environmental conditions change, and as monitoring results or additional information become available. The Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team should meet annually to review annual monitoring reports and summaries and make recommendations for revisions to the recovery plan, if appropriate. At a minimum, we anticipate the recovery plan will be revised on a 5-year basis.

Working with Federal, State, Tribal, and private entities, and in coordination with local governments, we need to secure quality habitat conditions for bull trout. These efforts should be coordinated with ongoing NOAA Fisheries and other salmon recovery actions to avoid duplication in planning and implementation.

In the Coastal-Puget Sound Distinct Population Segment, the Olympic Peninsula and Puget Sound Recovery Teams developed specific actions to remove the threats to bull trout in their respective management units. While there is general overlap for some actions between the two management units, other actions are specific to each management unit.

A summary table linking the actions (third tier actions) needed for recovery with the reasons for decline (threat categories) is provided in Appendix 3.

Recovery Actions Narrative Outline

1. Protect, restore, and maintain suitable habitat conditions for bull trout.
 - 1.1 Maintain or improve water quality in bull trout core areas or potential core habitat.
 - 1.1.1 Identify and improve or remove unstable or problem roads.

Use existing information from State, Tribal, and U.S. Forest Service surveys and watershed analyses, and Washington State Conservation Commission Salmon and Steelhead Habitat Limiting Factors Water Resources Inventories (WSCC 1999; 2000a, b; 2001) to identify problem roads and to stabilize roads, crossings, and other sources of sediment delivery. Evaluate roads to identify sediment sources and sediment delivery points during rainstorms and spring runoff. Implement U.S. Forest Service Watershed Improvement Needs and sediment source reduction activities throughout the Dungeness, Hoh, Quinault, Queets, and Skokomish core areas. For example, water draining from roads should be directed to slope infiltration areas and not streams to reduce sediment delivery. Where information is not available for problem roads, survey all bridges, culverts, fill slopes, and unstable road sections.

Efforts should initially focus on areas where sediments are delivered to known or suspected bull trout spawning and rearing habitat and watersheds with high levels of fine sediments and high road densities, such as those found in the South Fork Skokomish River and Church Creek in the Skokomish core area, Middle Dungeness River and Pats

and Gold Creeks in the Dungeness core area, and the Upper Clearwater River basin in the Queets core area.

Other problem roads include the Queets River Road, access roads leading into the park upstream from Lake Quinault and Owl Creek, and the Upper Hoh Road in the Hoh core area.

- 1.1.2 Improve routine road maintenance practices. Road maintenance practices have been identified as adversely affecting bull trout habitat where maintenance occurs on roads next to streams. Improve road maintenance protocols on all roads throughout the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit to eliminate or minimize erosion and riparian damage. For example, upslope road ditches should be directed to downslope areas away from stream channels to prevent discharging into streams. Another example includes increasing monitoring and cleaning out culverts to reduce the risk of road failures during heavy rain events. Suggested areas for initial focus of efforts include roads in the Hoh, Queets, Dungeness, and Quinault core areas.
- 1.1.3 Implement measures to restore natural thermal regime. Assess and minimize effects on bull trout from thermal increases (nonpoint sources) negatively impacting spawning and rearing areas and migratory corridors downstream. Water diversions and reservoir releases can cause elevated stream temperatures. Water temperatures should improve within riparian reserves on U.S. Forest Service lands. Restoring riparian vegetation on State, Tribal, and private lands will improve water quality and thermal conditions in the lower watersheds. Water temperature concerns have been identified to some extent in all core areas. For example, within the Quinault core area, temperature concerns were identified in the mainstem upstream from Lake Quinault, Falls Creek, and in the lower

Cook and Elk Creek watersheds. In the Queets core area, elevated stream temperatures were reported in the lower reaches of the Clearwater, Sams, Matheny, and Salmon River watersheds. In the Dungeness core area water temperatures are elevated throughout the lower watershed.

- 1.1.4 Assess and reduce water quality impacts from nutrient input from human activities. Reduce introduction of nutrients from human activities throughout the Dungeness and Skokomish River watersheds and Hood Canal by improving sewage treatment technologies, stormwater management, and livestock management to minimize contaminant and nutrient loading. In the Quinault core area evaluate potential effects to bull trout from proposed artificial fertilization of Lake Quinault to increase sockeye salmon production.
- 1.1.5 Encourage reestablishment of marine-derived nutrients. In the Elwha and Skokomish core areas salmon migrations have been blocked by dams, resulting in a reduction in marine-derived nutrients from salmon carcasses. Dispersing hatchery salmon carcasses in these systems can help increase available marine-derived nutrients until salmon spawning escapement levels are increased.
- 1.1.6 Monitor water quality and meet water quality standards for temperature, nutrient loading, dissolved oxygen, instream flow, and contaminants. Implement additional water temperature monitoring on State, Tribal, and Federal lands. Identify and correct causes of elevated temperatures in bull trout migratory, spawning, and rearing habitat. Evaluate current minimum forest practice and land use regulations for effectiveness in maintaining adequate riparian shading and large conifers for future large wood recruitment into the channel. Suggested areas to initially focus efforts, identified as having water quality as rated “poor” in WSCC

(2000a, b; 2001), include several tributaries of the Quinault River, including Joe, Mounts, Boulder, Railroad, Prairie, and Ten O’Clock Creeks [Quinault core area]; the Queets core area including the lower Queets corridor, Matheny Creek, the lower Sams and Clearwater Rivers, as well as the mainstem Salmon River and South Fork Salmon River; Hoh core area including Nolan, Anderson, Elk, Winfield, Willoughby, Maple, and Owl Creeks, as well as portions of the South Fork Hoh River; Elwha core area including the area between the Elwha and Glines Canyon Dams and to the mouth of the Elwha River downstream of Elwha Dam; and Hood Canal. Temperature data for the Skokomish River was collected by the Washington Department of Ecology during the mid- to late 1990’s but was not readily available to the team at this time.

Increase monitoring and enforcement of water quality standards and implement the Total Maximum Daily Load program (Washington Department of Ecology and U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). Core areas with stream segments on the 1998 Washington Department of Ecology 303(d) list of waters in the State that are impaired by pollutants (Appendix 2) include the Skokomish (fecal coliform and low instream flow), Dungeness (low instream flow), Elwha (PCB-1254 and high temperature), Hoh (Nolan Creek high temperature), and Queets (fecal coliform, high temperature, and oxygen).

- 1.1.7 Identify, restore, and protect groundwater and hyporheic sources. The location of bull trout spawning sites has been correlated to areas with groundwater upwellings (Baxter and Hauer 2000). Identification, protection, and where necessary, restoration of these important groundwater areas will contribute to cold water in bull trout streams. Restoring hydrologic function impacted by old railroad and road grades near tributaries in the flat coastal piedmont will

likely improve base flows and coldwater refuge areas for anadromous bull trout in the Quinault, Skokomish, Dungeness, and Hoh core areas. In all core areas, identify and protect important alluvial reaches that likely provide important flow paths for hyporheic and shallow groundwater.

In local bull trout populations and potential local populations within the Hoh, Queets, Quinault, Dungeness and Skokomish core areas, use information on groundwater sources to help determine potential bull trout distribution through correlation with groundwater inflow and to estimate location of suitable bull trout habitat in both occupied and unoccupied streams.

- 1.1.8 Eliminate fine sediment sources from historical roads and railroads. Identify sources of fine sediment input from historical road networks on Federal, Tribal, and State lands. Reduce and prevent erosion from identified problem locations on motorized access roads and from closed roads at trailheads. For example, in the lower Quinault core area, old logging roads, log stringer bridges, and abandoned railroad grades have been identified in several watersheds, including Boulder, Cook, Railroad, and Ten O’Clock Creeks.
- 1.1.9 Adopt and implement a stormwater strategy for the Dungeness watershed, the lower Elwha watershed, and Hood Canal. Stormwater should be managed in tributaries, such as Bell, Matriotti, and Siebert Creeks, in these rapidly developing areas to reduce current stormwater effects and minimize future additional effects.
- 1.2 Identify barriers or sites of entrainment for bull trout and implement actions to provide passage and eliminate entrainment.

- 1.2.1 Eliminate entrainment in diversions and ditches. Monitor and maintain screened water diversions and irrigation ditches in the Dungeness core area to reduce entrainment losses and/or eliminate unneeded diversions. Evaluate compliance with State, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and NOAA Fisheries screening criteria. Where feasible and as needed, screen diversions to meet State and Federal requirements.

- 1.2.2 Identify diversions that block fish passage and provide fish passage where feasible. Identify diversions that may block fish passage and install appropriate fish passage structures around diversions and/or remove related migration barriers to facilitate bull trout movement. Priority core areas include the Dungeness, Quinault, and Skokomish.

In the Quinault core area, approximately 10 to 50 percent of the flows in Cook Creek are diverted through the Quinault National Fish Hatchery, and an electronic weir prevents upstream passage. Provide opportunities for passage of bull trout around the hatchery via a bypass channel and seasonal operation of the weir. In the Dungeness core area, restore fish passage in Canyon Creek past the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife Dungeness Hatchery intake dam; dam removal is the preferred option to restore biological processes. Ensure that the collection rack at the hatchery does not block upstream movement of bull trout during their spawning migration.

- 1.2.3 Eliminate culvert barriers. Monitor road crossings for blockages to upstream passage and, where beneficial to native fishes, replace or improve existing culverts that impede passage.

Many road crossings consist of culverts that may act as barriers to fish movement. Culverts acting as barriers should be identified and remedied using, for example, concrete box or bottomless arched culverts, bridges, or other means. The Washington Department of Natural Resources, Washington Department of Transportation, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Quinault Indian Nation, U.S. Forest Service, Olympic National Park, and several private timber companies have completed, or are currently conducting, culvert blockage inventories.

Use existing culvert inventories or conduct additional inventories if needed. Within 5 years, develop a program with schedules for barrier culvert replacement or modification to improve fish passage and ecological function of the aquatic system. Criteria for prioritizing culvert replacement should include increasing access for migratory fish and amount of suitable habitat available upstream of the culvert. Examples in the Limiting Factors Analysis (WSCC 1999; 2000a, b; 2001) of areas with culverts needing repairs or replacements include: tributaries to Lake Quinault (Higley, McCormic, and Slide Creeks), Gatton and July Creeks, the South Shore Road, and several tributaries in the lower watershed [Quinault core area]; Clearwater and Salmon Rivers and Tacoma Creek [Queets core area]; Upper Hoh Road and several roads in the lower basin, South Fork Hoh River and Nolan and Goodman Creeks [Hoh core area]; and Hot Springs Road in Griff and Madison Creeks [Elwha core area]. Refer to the Washington State Conservation Commission Limiting Factors Analysis for a detailed list of culverts needing repairs in all core areas (WSCC 1999; 2000 a,b; 2001).

- 1.2.4 Eliminate or modify the tidegate on the Skokomish River. Eliminate or modify the tidegate on the Skokomish River to allow significantly greater tidal flux into the estuary and lower river. Use of the salt marsh for rearing salmonids could likely be significantly improved by increasing the amount of tidal flux occurring within the estuary.
 - 1.2.5 Restore bull trout passage over dams and other related fish passage barriers. Assess man-made barriers that eliminate upstream and downstream fish movement in the Elwha core area (proposed Glines Canyon and Elwha Dam removals), the Skokomish core area (Cushman Dams 1 and 2, Elk Creek), the Dungeness core area (Canyon Creek), and the Quinault core area (Cook Creek). Restore passage where advisable and feasible. Assess downstream passage hazards at dams that cause injury and mortality to bull trout passing through the power tunnel and/or turbines or over spillways. Screen intakes, install fish bypasses, or provide other measures to eliminate or reduce injuries and mortalities.
 - 1.2.6 Improve instream flows. Restore connectivity and opportunities for migration by securing or improving instream flows and/or acquiring water rights. Priority streams identified to date include the Dungeness, Elwha, and lower North Fork Skokomish Rivers.
 - 1.2.7 Improve the efficiency of the Dungeness watershed irrigation network. Commit conserved water to instream flow. Develop a water use plan to reduce dependence on shallow groundwater withdrawals.
- 1.3 Identify impaired stream channel and riparian areas and implement actions to restore their appropriate functions.

- 1.3.1 Restore and protect riparian areas. Identify degraded riparian sites and revegetate to restore shade and canopy, riparian cover, and native vegetation to improve or maintain both occupied and potentially suitable bull trout habitat. The upper basins of Olympic Peninsula Management Unit core areas are mostly within the Olympic National Park. Degraded riparian conditions are most prevalent in the middle and lower watersheds. Restoring mature conifers along streams in the lower watershed will improve water quality in areas used for foraging, migration, and overwintering by bull trout and may eventually provide suitable habitat for spawning and juvenile rearing. Areas identified in the Limiting Factors Analysis (WSCC 1999; 2000a, b; 2001) where riparian vegetation conversion to early forest seral stages[†] within forest management areas and conversion from riparian forested habitat to agricultural land have occurred, include the lower Dungeness, Quinault, Hoh, Skokomish, Queets River basins. Opportunities should be explored to reestablish coniferous and hardwood species within converted riparian zones along with specific management to maintain the existing functioning riparian zone structure. The removal of the Elwha Dams will necessitate the reestablishment of riparian vegetation along all newly formed streambank areas.
- 1.3.2 Identify, evaluate, and restore overwintering habitat in the mainstem rivers and tributaries. In all core areas, identify specific overwintering areas used by bull trout in the mainstem rivers, estuaries, and tributaries, and classify general overwintering habitat for use, current condition, and restoration potential. Determine where overwintering habitat areas are degraded by factors such as sediment accumulation, bedload movement, or low flows in all core areas. Implement necessary restoration activities as

described throughout this section to improve overwintering habitat.

- 1.3.3 Identify, evaluate, and restore important bull trout freshwater foraging waters. Identify and prioritize restoration actions for streams where bull trout forage or where bull trout occurrence may be incidental (including contributing waters having no bull trout) but restoration will contribute to recovery of the bull trout prey base. For example, priority freshwater foraging areas include resident and anadromous reaches of Brown, Church, La Bar, Pine, and Vance Creeks (Skokomish core area); Quinault River mainstem upstream from the lake, anadromous tributaries to Lake Quinault, and anadromous reaches of Cook (with passage at the hatchery), Boulder, Ten O’Clock, and Prairie Creeks (Quinault core area); the mainstem, and anadromous reaches of Matheny Creek, the Sams and Salmon Rivers, and the Upper Clearwater River (Queets core area); middle Hoh Road and Washington Department of Natural Resources lands along the mainstem and Lower South Fork Hoh River (Hoh core area); and Gold Creek (Dungeness core area).
- 1.3.4 Reduce stream channel degradation and aggradation. Identify streambanks susceptible to excessive mass wasting and bank failure. On Olympic National Park and Olympic National Forest lands, use road network surveys and watershed analyses to identify and map all stream reaches with actively eroding streambanks that likely result from management activities and are susceptible to excessive failure during high flow events. Identify all head-cuts[†] and incidences of mass wasting that may negatively impact riparian areas and inhibit natural stream functions. Ensure negative effects to bull trout from degraded areas are minimized. Suggested areas for initial focus of actions include the Skokomish, Dungeness, Hoh, Queets, and

Quinault core areas. Examples where aggradation and channel incision associated with a loss of woody material have been identified include Owl and Nolan Creeks on the Hoh River (Hoh core area); the Dungeness River mainstem (Dungeness core area); and Matheny Creek and the Sams River (Queets core area).

- 1.3.5 Practice nonintrusive flood control and flood repair activities. Provide technical assistance to county Conservation Districts (Natural Resources Conservation Service) and private landowners to develop options for fish friendly flood-repair techniques to improve or restore channel processes benefitting bull trout or their habitat. Ensure negative effects to bull trout from ongoing flood control activities are minimized (*e.g.*, dredging, woody debris removal, channel clearing, and bank stabilization on the South Fork Skokomish and Dungeness Rivers). To restore floodplain connectivity, where feasible, prevent future armored or riprapped banks, dikes, and levies and remove existing armoring. Priority core areas include the lower Dungeness River; Hoh River; North Fork, South Fork and mainstem Skokomish Rivers; lower Elwha River; and Quinault River.
- 1.3.6 Reduce impacts of development in streams, floodplains and lake shores. Restore floodplain function by exploring all funding sources for acquisition of floodplains by State, County, and Federal agencies, including Federal Emergency Management Agency. Encourage local jurisdictions to apply zoning restrictions that eliminate development in floodplains and in close proximity to lakes. Avoid and minimize further development that would constrict or constrain stream channels, degrade riparian areas, negatively impact groundwater and surface water interactions, or in any other way degrade floodplain function. Restoring floodplain connectivity is a priority on

the mainstem rivers. Suggested areas to initially focus efforts include the Dungeness and Skokomish Rivers (including Lake Cushman) and Lake Quinault.

- 1.3.7 Reduce transportation corridor impacts on streams. Reduce impacts from the legacy of highway and railroad encroachment, channel straightening, channel relocation, and undersized bridges. Where necessary and feasible, remove existing bank armoring (bulkheads and riprap) and channel constrictions (*e.g.*, dikes and levies) associated with transportation-corridor construction. Plan and develop future transportation corridors that eliminate the need for armoring and channel constriction. Priority restoration areas include Highway 101 Skokomish River Bridge (Skokomish core area); Schoolhouse Bridge (Dungeness core area,); North and South Shore Roads and crossing at Highway 101 and Cannings Creek (Quinault core area); Highway 101 bridge crossing at the community of Queets, the Clearwater Road bridge crossing, and the Queets River Road (Queets core area); and the Highway 101 crossing at the Hoh oxbow and the Upper Hoh Road (Hoh core area). Reduce road densities on U.S. Forest Service roads to achieve the U.S. Forest Service's targets in the Dungeness and Skokomish core areas.

Relocate riparian roads and bridge constrictions out of the floodplain. Where possible, move roads out of floodplains or away from streams having local populations of bull trout or streams that have been identified as essential for reestablishing local populations of bull trout. Where roads cannot be moved, provide drainage, recontour road fill slopes, plant woody vegetation, and seed with native vegetation to prevent slumping. Add adequate surface material if needed to prevent sediment movement. Bridges that restrict channel movement can severely restrict channel function. Suggested areas for initial focus of

efforts include Upper Hoh Road (Hoh core area); throughout the mainstem Dungeness River (Dungeness core area); lower Elwha River floodplain (Elwha core area); and the access road to Olympic National Park (Quinault core area). All core areas within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit should have floodplain roads and bridges evaluated and relocations or improvements made where necessary.

- 1.3.8 Improve grazing practices. Identify areas affected by unrestricted animal access in riparian areas. Develop, implement, and adaptively manage livestock grazing plans. Plans should include actions (*e.g.*, riparian fencing, off-channel watering), performance standards, and targets for floodplains, riparian vegetation, and streambanks that effectively protect bull trout habitat and water quality. Areas of focus include the South Fork, North Fork and mainstem Skokomish, lower Hoh, and lower Dungeness Rivers and tributaries.
- 1.3.9 Restore natural stream channel morphology[†]. Conduct stream channel restoration activities if they are likely to benefit native fish and only where similar results cannot be achieved by other less costly and intrusive means. Priority core areas include lower Dungeness and Elwha Rivers.
- 1.3.10 Restore instream habitat. Increase or enhance instream habitat by restoring habitat diversity. Projects should focus on the enhancement of habitat elements, such as large woody debris, logjams, and complex channels in the short-term, and restoration of processes supporting these habitat elements in the long-term. Example areas to focus efforts include Matheny, Salmon, Clearwater, and Sams drainages (Queets core area); Cook, Chow Chow, Ten O’Clock, Prairie, Boulder, Mounts, and Railroad Creeks (Quinault core area); Owl and Nolan Creeks (Hoh core area); lower

and middle mainstem Dungeness River, Gray Wolf River, and Canyon Creek (Dungeness core area); Church, Pine, Cedar, LeBar, Brown, Rock, Vance, Hunter/Weaver, Purdy, and Skobob Creeks and the mainstem Skokomish and South Fork Skokomish Rivers (Skokomish core area); and Morse and Siebert Creeks (Strait of Juan de Fuca foraging, migration, overwintering habitat) (WSCC 2000a). The systematic restructuring of the lower and middle Elwha River with large woody debris is needed to control sediments from degrading pools and spawning gravels once the dams are removed.

- 1.3.11 Protect riparian and channel habitat at campgrounds, trail systems, and recreation sites. Develop riparian and stream channel management plans to protect migration, spawning, and rearing habitat adjacent to trail systems, camping, and recreation sites. Relocate campgrounds out of riparian areas when necessary to avoid impacts to bull trout habitat. Restore and protect riparian and channel habitat along heavily used trails and trailheads. Priority areas include the Hoh and Skokomish core areas.
- 1.3.12 Restore natural sediment routing and fluvial processes. Excessive movement of bedload material has resulted in filling of pools, increased width to depth ratios, and lower base flows. Areas of focus include mainstem Skokomish and South Fork Skokomish Rivers including Vance, Church, and Brown Creeks (Skokomish core area) and lower Dungeness River (river mile 0 to river mile 11; Dungeness core area).
- 1.3.13 Reduce impacts associated with recreational use of the rivers. Enforce Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife Hydraulic Project Approval permits to reduce impacts associated with recreational use of the rivers, including unregulated channel dredging by recreational

miners and removal of logjams to enhance boat passage. Areas of concern include the mainstems and major tributaries of the Hoh, Queets, and Quinault Rivers.

1.3.14 Reduce riparian firewood harvest. Implement public awareness and signing campaigns or regulatory actions to reduce firewood cutting in riparian areas, especially in and around campgrounds and in the South Fork Skokomish River riparian areas.

1.4 Operate dams to minimize negative effects on bull trout in reservoirs and downstream.

1.4.1 Reduce reservoir operational impacts. Review reservoir operational concerns (water-level manipulation, minimum pool, etc.) and provide and implement operating recommendations for Cushman Reservoir and Lake Kokanee (North Fork Skokomish River, Skokomish core area) and Lake Mills and Lake Aldwell (Elwha River, Elwha core area).

1.4.2 Provide instream flow downstream from dams. Maintain or exceed established instream flows downstream from Glines Canyon and Lower Elwha Dams (Elwha River, Elwha core area), and Cushman Dams (North Fork Skokomish River, Skokomish core area).

1.5 Identify upland conditions negatively affecting bull trout habitats and implement actions to restore appropriate functions.

1.5.1 Update the 1995 Olympic National Forest and State watershed analyses. Review management activities and short- and long-term goals for compatibility with bull trout recovery in the Forest Service watershed analyses for the South Fork Skokomish, Quinault, and Dungeness Rivers, and Matheny Creek. Review prescriptions in State

watershed analyses to ensure they are consistent with bull trout recovery, and reconvene prescription teams as needed to revise them.

- 1.5.2 Upgrade or decommission problem roads associated with legacy timber harvest in the uplands. Continue to mitigate for the legacy of intensive timber harvest and poor silvicultural and road construction practices in steep and highly erosive hill slopes. Past clear-cutting practices and high density road systems have resulted in mass wasting events and continued erosions and sediment introduction into bull trout habitats. Priority areas include upper Dungeness River and tributaries (Dungeness core area); South Fork Skokomish River and tributaries (Skokomish core area); and the middle Hoh River and tributaries (Hoh core area).
- 1.5.3 Minimize levels of effective impervious surface from development. Minimize the effects of impervious surfaces by protecting hydrologically mature forest cover to the maximum extent feasible, and by implementing other low impact development measures. Or, if lacking such forest condition, protect the opportunity to reestablish forest cover by minimizing amount of clearing, buildings and infrastructure. If reestablishment of forest cover is not possible due to existing high intensity development (*e.g.*, established areas of cities and unincorporated urban growth areas), then require highest levels of stormwater engineering and integrate low impact development measures (*e.g.*, impervious surface removal, roof top gardens) where possible. For rural areas (*i.e.*, lands not in cities or not within unincorporated areas with existing high density development) draining to bull trout foraging, migration and overwintering areas, maintain at least (but preferably more than) 65 percent hydrologically mature forest cover and no more (and preferably much less) than

10 percent effective impervious area. For cities and unincorporated areas with existing high density development, require the highest level of stormwater engineering available. For catchments draining to areas that are used for spawning and early rearing areas, developments should strive for zero percent effective impervious surfaces (*i.e.*, all stormwater should be treated on site to match predevelopment peaks, duration and quality), and at least (but preferably much more than) 65 percent forest cover. Generally, protected forest cover should be contiguous with riparian areas, steep slopes, aquifer recharge areas and wetlands. Accomplish these protections through appropriate zoning and development standards.

1.6 Identify impaired estuarine and nearshore habitats and implement actions to restore their appropriate function.

1.6.1 Implement projects that are key to restoring nearshore habitats. Key restoration projects for the Elwha, Skokomish, and Dungeness Rivers nearshore and estuary habitats include: providing or improving beach nourishment (*i.e.*, accumulation of sand and gravel materials for forming habitat); removing, moving, or modifying artificial structures (*e.g.*, bulkheads, riprap, dikes, tidegates); using alternative shoreline erosion and flooding protection measures that avoid or minimize impact to natural nearshore processes; and restoring estuaries and nearshore habitats such as eelgrass beds and kelp beds.

2. Prevent and reduce negative effects of nonnative fishes and other nonnative species on bull trout.

- 2.1 Develop, implement, and enforce public and private fish stocking policies to reduce stocking of nonnative fishes that affect bull trout.
 - 2.1.1 Review effectiveness of current fish stocking policies. Eliminate planting nonnative fish species in areas draining into bull trout habitat. Reduce negative effects of fish stocking to bull trout and monitor for increased fishing pressure, alterations to prey base, competition, etc., that could impact bull trout.
- 2.2 Enforce policies for preventing illegal transport and introduction of nonnative fishes.
 - 2.2.1 Review existing policies, including enforcement policies, for preventing illegal transport and introduction of nonnative fishes. Make necessary changes to improve effectiveness of existing policies and revise policies as necessary.
- 2.3 Increase public awareness about ecosystem concerns of illegal introductions of nonnative fishes.
 - 2.3.1 Discourage unauthorized fish introductions. Implement educational effort describing the problems and consequences of unauthorized fish introductions, especially brook trout.
 - 2.3.2 Develop a public information program about bull trout. Develop a public information program with broad emphasis on bull trout ecology and life history requirements and more specific focus on regionally or locally important recovery issues.
- 2.4 Evaluate biological, economic, and social effects of control of nonnative fishes.

2.4.1 Review existing protocols for eradicating, suppressing, or managing nonnative fish populations and implement protocols where needed. Conduct research and analysis of existing protocols to describe the most effective methods for managing, reducing, or eradicating nonnative fish populations from waters where they negatively impact bull trout recovery.

2.5 Implement control of nonnative fishes where found to be feasible and appropriate.

2.5.1 Determine distribution and abundance of nonnative fish (i.e. brook trout) and identify overlap with bull trout. Brook trout interbreed with bull trout and may outcompete them under certain conditions. Where information is lacking and the risk is high (e.g., bull trout populations are depressed, habitat is degraded, and brook trout are present), conduct surveys in high lakes or tributaries to determine distribution of brook trout and degree of interbreeding, or potential for interbreeding, between bull trout and brook trout. Priority core areas include the Elwha, Dungeness, and Skokomish.

2.5.2 Identify brook trout and other nonnative fish populations impacting bull trout and evaluate feasibility of their removal. Upon identification of streams with impacts from nonnative species, develop strategies for removal or reduction of nonnative fish that may compete directly for food and space with bull trout. Evaluate whether removal of the nonnative species is biologically feasible and whether removal is economically and socially supportable.

2.5.3 Remove established brook trout populations impacting bull trout. Where necessary and feasible, implement experimental removal of brook trout from selected streams and lakes. Priority areas include the Skokomish core area,

including Spider Lake, Brown Creek Beaver Pond, and Upper North Fork Skokomish River; Elwha core area, including Indian Creek; and the Quinault core area, including Enchanted Valley.

3. Establish fisheries management goals and objectives compatible with bull trout recovery and implement practices to achieve goals.
 - 3.1 Develop and implement State and Tribal native fish management plans integrating adaptive research.
 - 3.1.1 Integrate research and monitoring results into fish management plans and related salmonid information resources. Update native fish management plans [*e.g.*, bull trout/Dolly Varden Management Plan, Salmonid Stock Inventory (SaSI) appendix for bull trout and Dolly Varden, Wild Salmonid Policy, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife's spawn survey database] with the latest results from bull trout research and monitoring, including distribution and population status. Develop and implement native fish management plans that emphasize timely integration of research results into management programs.
 - 3.1.2 Protect remaining bull trout strongholds and native species complexes. Protect the integrity of areas with bull trout strongholds and intact native species assemblages (*e.g.*, upper Queets [Queets core area]; upper Hoh [Hoh core area]; upper Dungeness and Gray Wolf [Dungeness core area]; and upper Elwha [Elwha core area] Rivers.
 - 3.1.3 Provide increased forage opportunities in freshwater. Establish improved forage opportunities by managing for increased salmon spawning escapement complementary to related habitat improvements to increase salmon productivity and abundance. Priority core areas include the Skokomish, Dungeness, and Elwha.

- 3.1.4 Increase biomass of marine forage base. Improve marine prey base (*e.g.*, surf smelt, sandlance, herring) known to be important to bull trout, through appropriate forage fish habitat protection and management measures.
- 3.2 Evaluate and prevent overharvest and incidental angling mortality of bull trout.
- 3.2.1 Develop reporting requirements for recreational, commercial, and Tribal fisheries to evaluate bull trout catch and incidental mortality during fisheries for other species. Collect information on magnitude and timing of bull trout caught and incidentally killed in State and Tribal fisheries in core areas and in foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat through expanded creel surveys and other reporting methods. Develop and recommend corrective action if necessary.
- 3.2.2 Evaluate and minimize incidental mortality of bull trout from recreational, gill-net, and other fisheries. Continue to develop and implement sport angling regulations and fisheries management plans, guidelines, and policies that minimize incidental mortality of bull trout in all waters, especially gill-net fisheries concentrated at the mouth of Olympic Peninsula rivers. Conduct research and develop more selective gear and seasons for salmon gill-net fisheries that will minimize incidental mortality of bull trout, such as adjusting net mesh sizes and/or duration of having nets out, placement of nets to minimize incidental capture of bull trout, and developing incentives to increase likelihood of bull trout being released alive from gill-net fisheries. It is important to provide extra monitoring of the Elwha River gill-net fishery following removal of the dams on the Elwha River and, if necessary, reduce capture of bull trout in the lower river.

- 3.2.3 Increase enforcement of angling regulations and target bull trout spawning and staging areas for extra enforcement efforts. Increase enforcement and posting of “closed waters” and bull trout informational signs in all readily accessible staging and spawning areas, and in areas with a known history of illegal harvest. Priority watersheds include the Dungeness, Hoh, and Skokomish (including Lake Cushman) core areas.
 - 3.2.4 Implement angler awareness programs. Provide educational information to anglers and the public about bull trout identification, special regulations, methods to reduce hooking mortality, proper catch and release techniques, and the importance of bull trout and their habitat. Establish interpretive signs at all high-use fishing access points. Increase outreach efforts during the salmon and steelhead fishing season when and where bait is allowed for angling.
 - 3.2.5 Solicit information from commercial fishing guides. Develop a reporting system and collect information on bull trout including catch per unit effort, observations, mortalities, or releases by recreational anglers.
- 3.3 Evaluate the potential effects of introduced fishes and associated sport fisheries on bull trout recovery and implement actions to minimize negative effects on bull trout.
- 3.3.1 Monitor and evaluate the effects of salmon and trout hatchery production, stocking, and associated fisheries on bull trout. Salmon and trout stocking or hatchery production occurs in all core areas. Evaluate effects to bull trout from competition, predation, disease, and related increased angling effort resulting from stocking salmon and trout.

- 3.3.2 Evaluate current and proposed fish stocking and reintroduction plans for Lake Cushman. Spawning habitat is limited upstream from Lake Cushman and increased stocking of salmon could cause an increase in salmon redds being imposed on bull trout redds. Prior to reintroduction and stocking of salmonids into Lake Cushman in the Skokomish core area, ensure there will not be significant negative impacts to bull trout from imposition of salmon redds on bull trout redds.
- 3.4 Evaluate effects of existing and proposed commercial and sport fishing regulations on bull trout.
 - 3.4.1 Monitor and evaluate effects on bull trout from salmon and trout sport fisheries in Lake Cushman and Lake Kokanee. Make recommendations for regulation changes as needed to reduce significant impacts to bull trout from salmon and trout fisheries.
 - 3.4.2 Identify important bull trout spawning and staging areas that may require special regulations. Identify spawning and staging areas in all core areas. Where populations are depressed or fishing pressures are heavy in bull trout spawning and staging locations, recommend special regulations. Recommend closures during bull trout staging and spawning on the South Fork Skokomish River from Pine Creek to Church Creek.
- 4. Characterize, conserve, and monitor genetic diversity and gene flow among local populations of bull trout.
 - 4.1 Incorporate conservation of genetic and phenotypic attributes of bull trout into recovery and management plans.
 - 4.1.1 Develop and implement a genetic study plan for future collection and analysis of genetic samples from local

populations. Use molecular analysis to delineate and describe the genetic population structure of bull trout populations in the Olympic Peninsula, both among core areas and among local populations within core areas. Incorporate this information into future management strategies. For example, genetic work for both local populations in the South Fork Skokomish and North Fork Skokomish Rivers should include an objective to validate the assumption that bull trout in these two areas comprise one core population. Another objective is to determine whether a viable population exists or if inbreeding depression has become a factor which could hinder recovery efforts.

4.1.2 Determine level of interaction between bull trout and Dolly Varden populations. Evaluate the level of interaction between sympatric (co-occurring) bull trout and Dolly Varden populations within core areas, and incorporate results in the management of both species. Focus efforts on Quinault and Dungeness core areas with known populations of both species.

4.2 Maintain existing opportunities for gene flow among bull trout populations.

4.2.1 Evaluate level of gene flow among core areas. Determine the level (frequency and amount) of gene flow among and within core areas that are linked by marine waters. Design and implement research efforts to determine the full extent of anadromous bull trout migration patterns and use between core areas; foraging, migration, and overwintering habitats; and marine areas.

4.2.2 Prevent establishment of barriers. Annually monitor “problem areas” where recreationists construct man-made check dams for mining activities or to create swimming

holes (*i.e.*, Skokomish and Hoh Rivers). These unauthorized dams may block fish passage if not removed. Coordinate with management agencies to retain existing connectivity as management actions are planned by preventing the establishment of barriers (*e.g.*, structural barriers or unsuitable habitat conditions) that may inhibit the movement of bull trout within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

4.3 Develop genetic management plans and guidelines for appropriate use of transplantation and artificial propagation[†].

4.3.1 If needed, establish genetic reserve protocols and standards for initiating, conducting, and evaluating captive propagation programs supported by the recovery plan.

Although no core areas have been identified for propagation programs at this time, it may be necessary to artificially propagate bull trout to preserve fish that are likely to be extirpated or to conduct research. Protocols will be needed to standardize the process and prevent detrimental effects on the donor population and captive fish. If reestablishment of the Satsop River bull trout population is determined to be feasible, it may be necessary to develop a bull trout propagation program.

4.3.2 Establish protocols, standards, and guidelines for implementing and monitoring bull trout transplantation or stocking if necessary.

Transplantation and stocking may be appropriate to conserve bull trout in some instances. Protocols are needed to determine when the activities are appropriate, how to conduct the activities, and how to evaluate their effectiveness.

5. Conduct research and monitoring to implement and evaluate bull trout recovery activities consistent with an adaptive management approach using feedback from implemented site-specific recovery actions.

- 5.1 Design and implement a standardized monitoring program to assess the effectiveness of recovery efforts affecting bull trout and their habitats.
 - 5.1.1 Design and implement a population monitoring strategy for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Design and implement a monitoring strategy taking into account the unique conditions (*e.g.*, glacial turbidity, larger spawning and rearing tributaries, anadromous life history forms, remoteness of spawning sites) in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, and revise the strategy as necessary according to the principles of conservation biology and adaptive management. Develop a range of alternative methods for assessing population abundance. Add a monitoring component for foraging, migration, and overwintering habitats (*e.g.*, Kalaloch Creek, Grays Harbor, etc.) that are identified as essential for recovery.
 - 5.1.2 Implement a program to monitor and assess biological responses and changes in habitat from recovery actions. A standardized monitoring and assessment program needs to be developed and implemented to evaluate recovery criteria, assess and improve management actions, and ensure a coordinated strategy for the future of bull trout across their range within the coterminous United States. The program should include a protocol to reliably estimate bull trout abundance and population structure over time.
- 5.2 Conduct research to evaluate relationships among bull trout distribution and abundance, bull trout habitat, and recovery actions.
 - 5.2.1 Investigate bull trout temporal and spatial movement to describe the distribution of juvenile, subadult, and adult bull trout in freshwater, estuarine, and nearshore habitats. Bull trout use of nearshore marine areas, estuaries, and

lower mainstem rivers and their associated tributaries is poorly understood; questions remain regarding bull trout habitat preferences (*e.g.*, depth, salinity, substrate), range of migration, and foraging requirements, amongst other factors, in these areas.

Continue implementation of existing bull trout population abundance and distribution studies, and initiate new studies. The highest priority is to identify and map all spawning and rearing areas within core areas. Efforts should initially focus on the Dungeness, Elwha, Hoh, Queets, and Quinault core areas. For anadromous and fluvial bull trout, continue to determine full extent of foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat. Use this information to update and revise recovery recommendations.

5.2.2 Conduct research to determine the cause and severity of low population numbers in the Skokomish core area.

Several research projects have been identified that will more effectively define management actions necessary for recovery of this high risk core area, including determining the genetic structure of the population; developing an unbiased population size estimate; analyzing the influence of current and future hatchery planting of trout and salmon on bull trout and their prey base; investigating the effects of fluctuating lake levels and warm water at the North Fork Skokomish River inlet to Lake Cushman due to reservoir operations; and determining the extent of the threat of bull trout hybridization with brook trout in the South Fork Skokomish River.

5.2.3 Assess habitat capacity in the Satsop River and the potential for bull trout reestablishing a self-sustaining population. Bull trout historically occupied the West Fork Satsop and Canyon Rivers. The Satsop River is the only

tributary to the Chehalis River basin that is believed to have historically supported bull trout. No bull trout have been seen in the Satsop River since the 1970's and the species may be extirpated from that river.

- 5.2.4 Collect, compile, and analyze temperature data to determine bull trout distribution limits. Bull trout have very cold temperature requirements and temperature is believed to limit bull trout distribution. Temperature profiles may help to identify bull trout distribution limits.
 - 5.2.5 Identify and assess the complete estuarine and marine forage base for bull trout. Conduct research to identify the complete forage base used by bull trout in estuarine and marine habitats. Assess the current condition of this forage base and evaluate its long-term role in recovery. This assessment should include identifying the forage species of greatest importance for various life stages and determining adequate distribution and necessary abundance levels of these forage species to support bull trout recovery.
 - 5.2.6 Conduct migrational studies for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit and coordinate with the Puget Sound Management Unit and British Columbia. Information collected from these efforts will provide a more complete understanding of adult bull trout habitat requirements, as well as the interrelationship of anadromous populations between the two management units and British Columbia.
- 5.3 Conduct evaluations of the adequacy and effectiveness of best management practices in maintaining or achieving habitat conditions conducive to bull trout recovery.
- 5.3.1 Develop and implement a sediment monitoring program. Develop a sediment monitoring program and focus collection of periodic sediment sampling in bull trout

spawning tributaries to determine the impact of management actions on delivery of fine sediments.

Monitor all core areas where management activities may potentially release sediment into spawning, rearing, and migratory areas.

5.3.2 Develop and implement a temperature monitoring program.

Develop a temperature monitoring program and collect periodic temperature samples in bull trout spawning tributaries to determine the impact of management actions on stream temperatures. Monitor all core areas where management activities may potentially increase temperature in spawning, rearing, and migratory areas.

5.3.3 Evaluate the adequacy and effectiveness of best management practices.

Forest management on private lands is regulated by the Washington State Forest Practice Rules. The Natural Resource Conservation Service provides recommendations for agricultural management. Assess the adequacy of best management practices advocated by these and other entities, including keeping pesticides, sediment, and nutrients from entering streams, and recommend changes, as appropriate, to ensure recovery of bull trout..

5.4 Evaluate effects of diseases and parasites on bull trout, and develop and implement strategies to minimize negative effects.

5.4.1 Confirm the presence and potential extent of black spot disease in the Hoh River.

Black spot disease is caused by an infestation of one or more species of trematode (a parasitic flatworm). Olympic National Park biologists may have detected black spot disease in bull trout in the Hoh River. Black spot disease can cause mortality, particularly when infestations are heavy. It is uncertain whether black

spot disease is a factor in the decline of bull trout in the Hoh River.

5.5 Develop and conduct research and monitoring studies to improve information concerning the distribution and status of bull trout.

5.5.1 Develop a predictive model of suitable habitat used by juvenile and resident bull trout. Development of a suitable habitat model for bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula rivers would help to refine prioritization of areas for surveys intended to detect new spawning or juvenile rearing sites. A suitable habitat model would also help to prioritize areas for recovery efforts.

5.5.2 Continue and expand studies on bull trout distribution, abundance, life histories, and factors (e.g., habitat, demographics, etc.) affecting these characteristics. Bull trout are difficult to survey, and the Olympic Peninsula is especially difficult to survey due to limited access, glacial turbidity, and concurrent spawning by other salmonids. Additional studies are needed to better understand bull trout distribution, status, and limiting factors.

5.5.3 Locate additional spawning and early rearing sites. With increased survey efforts targeting bull trout, additional spawning sites and local populations will likely be identified within the management unit. The identification of additional local populations within the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit is a high priority.

5.6 Identify evaluations needed to improve understanding of relationships among genetic characteristics, phenotypic traits, and local populations of bull trout.

5.6.1 Determine the life history requirements and interactions of potentially overlapping resident and migratory bull trout

populations. The Olympic Peninsula has local populations that may contain both resident and migratory (anadromous, adfluvial, and fluvial) forms of bull trout. An understanding of the specific habitat requirements and interrelationship between resident and migratory forms will assist with monitoring and evaluating the recovery status of bull trout.

6. Use all available conservation programs and regulations to protect and conserve bull trout and bull trout habitats.
 - 6.1 Use partnerships and collaborative processes to protect, maintain, and restore functioning core areas for bull trout.
 - 6.1.1 Coordinate bull trout recovery with other listed salmonid species recovery efforts. The Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team will coordinate the implementation of bull trout recovery actions with Puget Sound Chinook and summer chum salmon recovery measures and other general salmon recovery efforts to avoid duplication of effort and maximize the use of available resources.
 - 6.1.2 Ensure protection of the highest quality spawning and rearing habitats remaining within each core area through conservation plans, land purchases, and easements. Use partnerships to develop habitat conservation plans, conservation land purchases, and easements within core areas. Maintain and promote State and Federal land management programs that protect the best remaining spawning and rearing habitat within the management unit. Examples include Federal Wilderness, Wild and Scenic Rivers, land trusts, and State and Federal parks.
 - 6.1.3. Develop collaborative approaches with landowners. Develop collaborative approaches with landowners, such as habitat conservation plans, conservation easements,

conservation land purchases, and habitat restoration projects, to implement conservation benefits to bull trout. Use partnerships and collaborative programs, such as Partners for Fish and Wildlife (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service), to maintain and promote restoration of bull trout habitat within the management unit. The Simpson Timber Company Habitat Conservation Plan is an example of proactive conservation management on the Olympic Peninsula.

6.2 Use existing Federal authorities to conserve and restore bull trout.

6.2.1 Ensure adequate protection for bull trout at all life stages under Washington State Water Quality Standards. Ensure that new and existing water quality criteria are protective of all bull trout life stages and their prey base. Support development of research directed at evaluating exposure to contaminants and their effects on bull trout. Determine optimal temperature requirements for subadult and adult life stages and develop appropriate water quality standards to protect these life stages in the areas where they occur (e.g., mainstem corridors, core area tributaries with anadromous use downstream of local populations, and independent tributaries used or potentially used by subadult and adult bull trout for foraging, migration, and holding).

6.3 Enforce existing Federal, State, and Tribal habitat protection standards and regulations and evaluate their effectiveness for bull trout conservation.

6.3.1 Support continued enforcement of Federal, State, and Tribal habitat protection standards and regulations. This includes standards and regulations in the Washington State Forest Practices Rules, Washington Department of Natural Resources Habitat Conservation Plan, Tribal Forest

Practice Rules, Shoreline Management Act, Growth Management Act, and Northwest Forest Plan.

7. Assess the implementation of bull trout recovery by management units and revise management unit recovery plans based on evaluations.
 - 7.1 Convene annual meetings of each management unit recovery team to review progress on recovery plan implementation.
 - 7.1.1 Generate progress reports on implementation of the bull trout recovery plan in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit. Annual reviews are necessary to track progress in implementing the recovery plan. Annual reports can be used to identify successful approaches for implementing recovery actions and direct where efforts should be placed within management units.
 - 7.2 Assess effectiveness of recovery efforts.
 - 7.2.1 Develop and implement a standardized monitoring program to evaluate the effectiveness of recovery efforts (coordinate with Recovery Action 5.1). A standardized monitoring program is needed to evaluate achievement of recovery objectives and provide information to adaptively manage and improve recovery efforts.
 - 7.3 Revise scope of recovery as suggested by new information.
 - 7.3.1 Periodically assess progress toward recovery goals and assess recovery action priorities. Annually review progress toward population and abundance targets and recommend changes, as needed, to the recovery plan. In addition, review actions, action priorities, completed actions, budget, time frames, particular successes, and feasibility of actions identified for recovery in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

IMPLEMENTATION SCHEDULE

Implementation schedules contained in each management unit chapter describe recovery action priorities, action numbers, action descriptions, duration of actions, potential or participating responsible parties, total estimated costs for the duration of the actions, cost estimates for the next 5 years, and comments. Those actions, when accomplished, will lead to recovery of bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, and ultimately to recovery of bull trout in the coterminous United States.

Parties with authority, responsibility, or expressed interest to implement a specific recovery action are identified in the implementation schedule. Listing a responsible party does not imply that prior approval has been given, nor does it require that party to participate or expend funds. However, willing participants will benefit by demonstrating that their budget submission or funding request is for a recovery action identified in an approved recovery plan and is therefore part of a coordinated effort to recover bull trout. In addition, section 7(a)(1) of the Endangered Species Act directs all Federal agencies to use their authorities to further the purposes of the Endangered Species Act by implementing programs for the conservation of threatened or endangered species.

In compliance with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Endangered and Threatened Species Listing and Recovery Priority Guidelines, Recovery Plan Preparation and Implementation Priorities (48 FR 43103), the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service has considered and adopted priorities and subpriorities that represent recovery goals for bull trout across their native range as well as those reflected in individual recovery chapters. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service also considered established conservation plans and the ongoing local, State and Federal planning processes to maintain consistency and integration with those efforts. Assigning priorities does not imply some recovery actions are of low importance as all recovery actions are important to achieve the recovery objectives. We further recognize lower priority actions may be implemented before higher priority actions because of the integration of bull trout recovery efforts with these existing plans and processes and/or the availability of funding opportunities. All recovery actions will have assigned priorities based on the following:

- Priority 1: All actions that must be taken to prevent extinction or to prevent the species from declining irreversibly in the foreseeable future.
- Priority 2: All actions that must be taken to prevent a significant decline in species population or habitat quality or to prevent some other significant negative effect short of extinction.
- Priority 3: All other actions necessary to provide for full recovery of the species.

Action Number and Action Description: Recovery actions as numbered in the recovery outline. Refer to the action narrative for action descriptions.

Action Duration: Expected number of years to complete the corresponding action. Study designs can incorporate more than one action that, when combined, can reduce the time needed for action completion.

Responsible or Participating Parties: The following organizations are those with responsibility or capability to fund, authorize, or carry out the corresponding action. Within the Implementation Schedule **bold** type indicates the agency or agencies that have the lead role for action implementation and coordination, though not necessarily sole responsibility. Additional identified agencies or parties (listed under “Other Agencies”) are considered cooperators in conservation efforts. Identified parties include the following:

Federal Agencies

ACOE	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
FERC	Federal Energy Regulatory Commission
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service (NOAA Fisheries)
NRCS	Natural Resources Conservation Service
ONP	Olympic National Park
USFWS	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
USFS	U.S. Forest Service

State Agencies

WDFW	Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife
WDNR	Washington Department of Natural Resources
WDOE	Washington Department of Ecology
WDOT	Washington Department of Transportation

Other Agencies

Tacoma Power	Public Utility
Counties	Jefferson, Clallam, Mason, and Grays Harbor County Governments
DR	Dungeness River Agricultural Water Users Association
QIN	Quinault Indian Nation
ST	Skokomish Tribe
JT	Jamestown S'Klallam Tribe
LET	Lower Elwha S'Klallam Tribe
Tribes	All of the above Tribes
SSPS	Shared Strategy for Puget Sound Watershed Groups
STC	Simpson Timber Company
RT	Rayonier Timber

Many of the actions necessary for bull trout recovery are related to restoration of the watershed(s) and as such are currently being implemented to some degree through existing programs and mandates. These actions are designated in the “comments” column as “ongoing.” However, current implementation is typically being carried out at limited funding levels and/or in only a portion of the watershed and will need to be expanded to result in measurable gains toward the bull trout recovery goal and objectives. Most of these restoration actions are strongly interrelated, and separate cost estimates in the accompanying implementation schedule represent rough approximations.

Cost Estimates: Cost estimates are rough approximations and provided only for general guidance. Total costs are estimated for both the duration of the action, are itemized annually for the next 5 years, and includes estimates of expenditures

by local, Tribal, State, and Federal governments and by private business and individuals.

An asterisk (*) in the total cost column indicates ongoing actions that are currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities under existing authorities. Because these actions are not being done specifically or solely for bull trout conservation, they are not included in the cost estimates. Some of these efforts may be occurring at reduced funding levels and/or in only a small portion of the watershed.

“TBD” in the total cost column indicates that the estimated costs for these actions are not determinable at this time. Input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

The symbol “‡” indicates costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
1	3.2.2	Evaluate and minimize incidental mortality of bull trout from recreational, gill-net, and other fisheries	25	Tribes, ONP, USFWS, WDFW	TBD						
1	3.3.2	Evaluate current and proposed fish stocking and reintroduction plans for Lake Cushman	4	FERC, ONP, Tacoma, WDFW, USFWS	40	10	10	10	10		
1	5.2.2	Conduct research to determine cause and severity of low population numbers in Skokomish core area	3	ONP, Tacoma Power, USFS, WDFW	180	60	60	60			
1	5.5.2	Continue and expand studies on bull trout distribution, abundance, life histories and factors affecting these characteristics	15	ONP, Tribes, USFS, WDFW, USFWS	140	40	40	20	20	20	Includes establishing index sites for surveying bull trout abundance
1	5.5.3	Locate additional spawning and early rearing sites	5	ONP, Tribes, USFS, WDFW, USFWS	300	60	60	60	60	60	Where appropriate use radio telemetry to track movements

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
1	6.1.2	Ensure protection of the highest quality spawning and rearing habitats remaining within each core area through measures including conservation land purchases and easements	25	ONP, USFS, USFWS, WDFW, WDNR	TBD						
1	6.2.1	Ensure adequate protection for bull trout at all life stages under Washington State Water Quality Standards	25	Counties, EPA, FERC, ONP, Tribes, USFS, USFWS, WDOE	*						
2	1.1.1	Identify and improve unstable or remove problem roads	25	Counties, ONP, Tribes, USFS, WDNR, WDOT	TBD						Complete ongoing surveys and inventories. Costs will be partially covered by ongoing actions
2	1.1.2	Improve routine road maintenance practices	25	Counties, ONP, Tribes, USFS, WDNR, WDOT	*						
2	1.1.3	Implement measures to restore natural thermal regime	25	DR, FERC, NRCS, Tribes, USFS	TBD						Costs will be partially covered by ongoing actions

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
2	1.1.6	Monitor water quality and meet water quality standards for temperature, nutrient loading, etc.	25	WDOE, EPA, USFS	TBD						
2	1.1.7	Identify, restore, and protect groundwater and hyporheic sources	25	DR, DNR, NRCS, Tribes, USFS	TBD						
2	1.1.8	Eliminate fine sediment sources from historical roads and railroads	20	QIN, USFS	TBD						Costs will be partially covered by ongoing actions
2	1.1.9	Adopt and implement a stormwater strategy for the Dungeness watershed, the lower Elwha watershed, and Hood Canal	5	Counties, WDOE	TBD						
2	1.2.1	Eliminate entrainment in diversions and ditches	25	DR, NRCS, USFWS	40	8	8	8	8	8	
2	1.2.2	Identify diversions that block fish passage and provide passage where feasible	25	DR, FERC, TG, USFWS, WDFW	‡						Costs partially covered by other actions (1.2.4, 1.2.5)
2	1.2.3	Eliminate culvert barriers	25	Counties, ONP, Tribes, USFS, WDNR, WDOT,	TBD						Total cost depends on number of culverts identified

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
2	1.2.5	Restore bull trout passage over dams and other related fish passage barriers	15	FERC, ONP, USFWS, Tacoma, WDFW	*						Cost will mostly be covered in salmon passage restoration projects. Total cost for Cushman Project upstream passage is estimated at 3 million. No estimate for downstream passage. Elwha Dam removal costs include complete ecosystem restoration and city water supply
2	1.2.6	Improve instream flows	25	DR, FERC, Tacoma, WDOE	TBD						
2	1.2.7	Improve the efficiency of the Dungeness watershed irrigation network	10	DR, NRCS, USFWS	TBD						
2	1.3.1	Restore and protect riparian areas	25	FERC, Tribes, USFS, WDNR, WDOT	TBD						

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
2	1.3.2	Identify, evaluate, and restore overwintering habitat in mainstem rivers and tributaries	25	USFS, USFWS, WDFW	TBD						Total cost depends on restoration needs
2	1.3.3	Identify, evaluate, and restore important bull trout freshwater foraging waters.	25	FERC, ONP, Tribes, USFS, USFWS, WDFW	TBD						Total cost partially depends on action 5.2.1
2	1.3.4	Reduce stream channel degradation and aggradation	25	ACOE, FERC, DR, ONP, STC, USFS, WDNR	‡						
2	1.3.5	Practice nonintrusive flood control and flood repair activities	25	ACOE, Counties, DR, FERC, NRCS	TBD						
2	1.3.6	Reduce impacts of development in streams, floodplains, and lake shores	25	ACOE, Counties, Tribes, WDFW	2000	400	400	400	400		Includes land purchase where appropriate
2	1.3.7	Reduce transportation corridor impacts on streams	25	ACOE, Counties, DNR, ONP, QIN, USFS, WDOT, WDFW	TBD						Costs will be partially covered by ongoing actions
2	1.3.9	Restore natural stream channel morphology	25	DR, FERC, ONP, USFWS	TBD						
2	1.3.10	Restore instream habitat	25	FERC, STC, Tribes, USFS, WDNR, WDFW	‡	200	200	200	100	100	Costs will be partially covered by other actions

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
2	1.3.12	Restore natural sediment routing and fluvial processes	25	Counties, FERC , ONP , USFS , WDOT , WDFW	‡						
2	1.3.13	Reduce impacts associated with recreational use of the rivers	25	ONP , USFS , WDFW	40	8	8	8	8	8	
2	1.4.1	Reduce reservoir operational impacts	25	FERC , ONP , Tacoma	‡						Costs will be partially covered by 1.2.4
2	1.4.2	Provide instream flow downstream from dams	25	FERC , ONP , Tacoma	TBD						Costs will be partially covered by 1.2.4
2	1.6.1	Implement projects that are key to restoring nearshore habitats	25	ACOE , Counties , FERC , ONP , Tribes, NMFS , USFS , USFWS	TBD						
2	2.3.2	Develop public information program about bull trout	5	ONP , USFWS , WDFW	*						
2	2.5.1	Determine distribution and abundance of nonnative fish (i.e., brook trout) and identify overlap with bull trout	5	ONP , USFS , USFWS , WDFW	100	20	20	20	20	20	Includes comprehensive surveys of lakes draining into bull trout streams

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
2	2.5.2	Identify brook trout and other nonnative fish populations impacting bull trout and evaluate feasibility of their removal	5	ONP, USFS, WDFW	20	4	4	4	4	4	Action follows completion of previous actions
2	2.5.3	Remove established brook trout populations impacting brook trout	25	ONP, USFS, WDFW	‡						Total cost depends on actions 2.5.2, 2.5.3
2	3.1.1	Integrate research and monitoring results into fish management plans	25	FERC, ONP , Tribes, USFS, USFWS, WDFW	‡						
2	3.1.2	Protect remaining bull trout strongholds and native species complexes	25	FERC, ONP , USFS, WDFW	TBD						
2	3.1.3	Provide increased forage opportunities in freshwater	25	NOAA Fisheries , Tribes, WDFW	TBD						
2	3.2.1	Develop reporting requirements for recreational, commercial, and Tribal fisheries to evaluate bull trout incidental mortality and catch during fisheries for other salmonid species	25	Tribes, USFWS, WDFW	150	20	20	20	20	20	
2	3.2.3	Increase enforcement of angling regulations and target bull trout spawning and staging areas for extra enforcement efforts	25	ONP , USFS, WDFW	500	100	100	100	100	100	At least one additional law enforcement officer

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
2	3.3.1	Monitor and evaluate effects on bull trout of salmon and trout hatchery production, stocking and associated fisheries	3	FERC, ONP, WDFW	50	20	15	15			
2	3.4.1	Monitor and evaluate effects on bull trout, salmon, and trout sport fisheries in Lake Cushman and Lake Kokanee	4	FERC, ONP, Tacoma, WDFW	100	25	25	25	25		Some costs may be covered under Action 3.3.1
2	3.4.2	Identify important bull trout spawning and staging areas that may require special regulations	25	ONP, USFS, WDFW	300	50	50	50	50	50	Total cost will depend on 5.5.1, 5.5.2
2	4.1.1	Develop and implement a genetic study plan for future collection and analysis of bull trout local populations	25	ONP, USFS, USFWS, WDFW	100	20	20	20	20	20	
2	4.2.2	Prevent establishment of barriers	25	Counties, NRCS, Tribes, USFS, WDNR, WDOT	TBD						

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
2	4.3.1	If needed establish genetic reserve protocols and standards for initiating, conducting, and evaluating captive propagation programs supported by the recovery plan	25	USFS, USFWS, WDFW	TBD						This action is dependent on results of 5.2.4 and priority becomes 1 if reintroduction is feasible and necessary
2	4.3.2	Establish protocols, standards, and guidelines for implementing and monitoring bull trout translocation or stocking if necessary	25	USFS, USFWS, WDFW	TBD						This action is dependent on results of 5.2.4, and becomes priority 1 if reintroduction is necessary
2	5.1.1	Design and implement a population monitoring strategy for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit	5	ONP, Tribes, USFS, USFWS, WDFW	TBD						
2	5.1.2	Implement a program to monitor and assess biological responses and changes in habitat from recovery actions	25	FERC, ONP, USFWS, USFS	250	50	50	50	50	50	

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
2	5.2.1	Investigate bull trout temporal and spatial movement to describe the distribution of juvenile, subadult, and adult bull trout in freshwater, estuarine, and nearshore habitats	5	ONP, Tribes, USFS, USFWS, WDFW	500	100	100	100	100	100	Ongoing. Some funding may be covered by other programs and Action 5.5.1
2	5.2.3	Assess capacity of habitat in the Satsop River and the potential for bull trout reestablishing a self-sustaining population	8	USFS, USFWS, WDFW	400	50	50	50	50		
2	5.2.4	Collect, compile and analyze temperature data to determine bull trout distribution limits	25	Tribes, USFS, USFWS, WDOE	350	75	75	75	75	50	Some costs may be covered under Action 1.1.8
2	5.2.5	Identify and assess complete estuarine and marine forage base for bull trout	2	USFWS, USGS, WDFW	200	100	100				
2	5.3.1	Develop and implement a sediment monitoring program	25	Tribes, USFS, USFWS, WDNR	*						
3	5.3.2	Develop and implement a temperature monitoring program	25	EPA, ONP, USFWS, USFS, WDNR, WDOE	*						

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
2	5.5.1	Develop a predictive model of suitable habitat used to detect juvenile and resident bull trout	4	WDNR, USFS, USFWS	180		30	75	75		Some costs are covered by 5.5.1 and costs will be shared with the Puget Sound Management Unit
2	6.2.2	Fully implement the Clean Water Act	25	Counties, EPA, FERC, ONP, ST, Tribes, USFS, WDOE	*						
2	6.3.1	Support continued enforcement of Washington Forest Practices Rules, Washington Department of Natural Resources Habitat Conservation Plan, Tribal Forest Practice rules Shoreline Management Act, Growth Management Act, and Northwest Forest Plan	25	Tribes, USFS, USFWS, WDNR	*						
2	7.1.1	Generate progress reports on implementation of the bull trout recovery plan for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit	25	ONP, Tribes, USFS, USFWS, WDFW	*						

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
2	7.2.1	Develop and implement a standardized monitoring program to evaluate the effectiveness of recovery efforts	25	USFWS	*						
3	1.1.4	Assess and reduce water quality impacts from nutrient input from human activities	25	DR, WDOE, EPA, NRCS,	*						
3	1.1.5	Encourage the reestablishment of marine-derived nutrients	25	ONP, USFS, WDFW	150	30	30	30	30	30	Costs partially covered by other action 1.2.4
3	1.2.4	Eliminate or modify tidegate on the Skokomish River		ACOE	TBD						
3	1.3.8	Improve grazing practices	25	NRCS, USFWS,	200						
3	1.3.11	Protect riparian and channel habitat at campgrounds, trail systems, and recreation sites	25	ONP, USFS, WDNR	50	10	10	10	10	10	
3	1.3.14	Reduce riparian firewood harvest	25	ONP, USFS, WDNR	50	10	10	10	10	10	
3	1.5.1	Update the 1995 Olympic National Forest and State watershed analyses	25	USFS	*						

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
3	1.5.2	Upgrade or decommission problem roads associated with legacy timber harvest in the upland	25	QIN, USFS, WDNR							
3	2.1.1	Review effectiveness of current fish stocking policies	2	WDFW	*						
3	2.2.1	Review existing policies, including enforcement policies, for preventing illegal transport and introduction of nonnative fishes	5	WDFW	*						
3	2.3.1	Discourage unauthorized fish introductions	25	ONP, USFWS, WDFW	*						
3	2.4.1	Review existing protocols for eradicating, suppressing, or managing nonnative fish populations and implement protocols where needed	2	ONP, USFS, USFWS, WDFW	*						
3	3.1.4	Increase biomass of marine forage base	25	NOAA Fisheries, Tribes, WDFW	*						
3	3.2.4	Implement angler education programs	25	ONP, USFWS, WDFW	100	20	20	20	20	20	

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
3	3.2.5	Solicit information from commercial fishing guides	25	ONP, USFWS, WDFW	25	5	5	5	5	5	
3	4.1.2	Determine level of interaction between bull trout and Dolly Varden populations		ONP, USFWS, WDFW	100	20	20	20	20	20	Costs will be shared with Puget Sound bull trout management unit
3	4.2.1	Evaluate level of gene flow among core areas	5	ONP, USFWS, WDFW	TBD						
3	5.2.6	Conduct migrational studies for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit and coordinate with the Puget Sound Management Unit and British Columbia	5	ONP, USFWS, USGS, WDFW	TBD						Costs will be shared with Puget Sound Management Unit
3	5.3.3	Evaluate the adequacy and effectiveness of best management practices	25	USFWS, WDOE	TBD						Ongoing. Some funding may be covered by other programs
3	5.4.1	Confirm presence and potential extent of black spot disease in the Hoh River	2	ONP, USFWS	80	40	40				

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

Implementation schedule for the draft bull trout recovery plan: Olympic Peninsula Management Unit											
Action priority	Action number	Action description	Action duration (years)	Responsible parties (Alphabetical)	Cost estimates (\$1,000)					Comments	
					Total cost	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4		Year 5
3	5.6.1	Determine the life history requirements and interactions of potentially overlapping resident and migratory bull trout populations	15	ONP, UFS, USFWS, WDFW	TBD						
3	6.1.1	Coordinate bull trout recovery with other listed salmonid species recovery efforts	25	NMFS, SSPS, Tribes, USFWS, WDFW	*						
3	6.1.3	Develop collaborative approaches with landowners	25	NRCS, SSPS, Tribes, USFWS	*						Costs depend on number of plans and projects
3	7.3.1	Periodically assess progress toward recovery goals and assess recovery action priorities	25	NRCS, Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team, SSPS, Tribes, USFS, USFWS, WDFW, WDNR, WDOE	*						
				TOTAL ESTIMATED COST	6,695						

* Ongoing actions currently being implemented as part of normal agency responsibilities; these actions are not included in the cost estimates since they are not being done specifically for bull trout conservation.

TBD Costs not determinable at this time; input is requested to help develop reasonable cost estimates for these actions.

‡ Costs are combined with or embedded within other related actions and are not itemized separately here.

REFERENCES

Literature Cited

- Aitkin, K.J. 1998. The importance of estuarine habitats to anadromous salmonids of the Pacific Northwest: a literature review. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Lacey, Washington. 24 pp.
- American Rivers. 1996. North America's most endangered and threatened rivers of 1966. Northwest Regional Office, Seattle, Washington.
- Armantrout, N.B., compiler. 1998. Glossary of aquatic habitat terminology. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland.
- Armstrong, R.H. 1965. Some migratory habits of the anadromous Dolly Varden *Salvelinus malma* (Walbaum) in southeastern Alaska. Research Report No. 3. Alaska Department of Fish and Game, Juneau, Alaska. 36 pp.
- Armstrong, R.H. and J.E. Morrow. 1980. The Dolly Varden char, *Salvelinus malma*. In E.K. Balon, ed. Charrs salmonid fishes of the genus *Salvelinus*. W. Junk Publishers, The Hague, The Netherlands.
- Bax, N.J., E.O. Salo, B.P. Snyder, C.A. Simenstad, and W.J. Kinney. 1978. Salmonid outmigration studies in Hood Canal, Final Report, Phase II, January to July 1977. University of Washington, Fisheries Research Institute, Seattle, Washington.
- Baxter, C.V. 2002. Fish movement and assemblage dynamics in a Pacific Northwest riverscape. Ph.D. dissertation, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon.
- Baxter, C.V. and F.R. Hauer. 2000. Geomorphology, hyporheic exchange, and selection of spawning habitat by bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*). Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 59:1470–1481.

- Baxter, C.V., C.A. Frissell, and F.R. Hauer. 1999. Geomorphology, logging roads, and the distribution of bull trout spawning in a forested river basin: implications for management and conservation. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 128:854–867.
- Baxter, J.S., E.B. Taylor, R.H. Devlin, J. Hagen and J.D. McPhail. 1997. Evidence for natural hybridization between Dolly Varden (*Salvelinus malma*) and bull trout (*S. confluentus*) in a north-central British Columbia watershed. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences*. 54:421–429.
- Beauchamp, D.A., and J.J. VanTassell. 2001. Modeling seasonal trophic interactions of adfluvial bull trout in Lake Billy Chinook, Oregon. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 130:204-216.
- Bell, M. 1991a. Revised compendium on the success of passage of small fish through turbines. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, North Pacific Division, Portland, Oregon.
- Bell, M. 1991b. Fisheries handbook of engineering requirements and biological criteria. Fish passage and development program. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, North Pacific Division, Portland, Oregon.
- Boag, T.D. 1987. Food habits of bull char, *Salvelinus confluentus*, and rainbow trout, *Salmo gairdneri*, coexisting in a foothills stream in northern Alberta. *Canadian Field Naturalist* 101:56-62.
- Bond, C.E. 1992. Notes on the nomenclature and distribution of the bull trout and the effects of human activity on the species. Pages 1-4. *In* Howell, P.J. and D.V. Buchanan, editors. *Proceedings of the Gearhart Mountain bull trout workshop*. Oregon Chapter of the American Fisheries Society, Corvallis, Oregon.
- Bonneau, J.L., and D.L. Scarnecchia. 1996. Distribution of juvenile bull trout in a thermal gradient plunge pool in Granite Creek, Idaho. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 125:628-630.

- Brenkman, S.J. 1998. Factors influencing spawning migration of bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) in the North Fork Skokomish River, Olympic National Park, Washington. M.S. Thesis, Oregon State University, Corvallis.
- Brenkman, S.J., and J. Meyer. 1999. Distribution and spawning migration of bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) in the Hoh River basin. Washington. Olympic National Park, Port Angeles, Washington.
- Brenkman, S.J., G.L. Larson, and R.E. Gresswell. 2001. Spawning migration of lacustrine-adfluvial bull trout in a natural area. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 130:981–987.
- Brix, R. 1974. 1974 data report of juvenile salmonid seining in Grays harbor and tributary rivers and electro-fishing and river seining in the Chehalis River in the vicinity of Washington Public Power Supply System's project nos. 3 and 5. State of Washington Department of Fisheries, Olympia, Washington.
- Brown., L.G. 1994. November 1992. The zoogeography and life history of WA native charr. Report #94-04. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Fisheries Management Division, Olympia, Washington.
- Buchanan, D.M., and S.V. Gregory. 1997. Development of water temperature standards to protect and restore habitat for bull trout and other cold water species in Oregon. Pages 1-8. In W.C. MacKay, M.K. Brewin, and M. Monita, editors. Friends of the Bull Trout Conference Proceedings. Bull Trout Task Force (Alberta), c/o Trout Unlimited Calgary, Alberta, Canada.
- Carl, L. 1985. Management plan for bull trout in Alberta. Pages 71-80. In D.D. MacDonald, ed. Proceedings of the Flathead River basin bull trout biology and population dynamics modeling information exchange. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Fisheries Branch, Cranbrook, British Columbia.

- Cavender, T.M. 1978. Taxonomy and distribution of the bull trout, (*Salvelinus confluentus*) (Suckley), from the American Northwest. California Fish and Game 64(3):139-174.
- Costello, A.B., T.E. Down, S.M. Pollard, C.J. Pacas, and E.B. Taylor. 2003. The influence of history and contemporary stream hydrology on the evolution of genetic diversity within species: an examination of microsatellite DNA variation in bull trout, *Salvelinus confluentus* (Pisces: Salmonidae). Evolution 57:328-344.
- Crane, P.A., L.W. Seeb, and J.E. Seeb. 1994. Genetic relationships among *Salvelinus* species inferred from allozyme data. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 51:182-197.
- Crow, J.F., and M. Kimura. 1970. An introduction to population genetics theory. Harper and Row, New York.
- DeCicco, A.L. 1992. Long-distance movements of anadromous Dolly Varden between Alaska and the U.S.S.R. Arctic 45(2):120-123.
- Donald, M.A. 1991. Bull trout/Dolly Varden investigation. Unpublished report. Quilcene Ranger District, Olympic National Forest, Quilcene, Washington.
- Donald, D.B., and D.J. Alger. 1993. Geographic distribution, species displacement, and niche overlap for lake trout and bull trout in mountain lakes. Canadian Journal of Zoology 71:238-247.
- Dunham, J.B., and B.E. Rieman. 1999. Metapopulation structure of bull trout: influences of physical, biotic, and geometrical landscape characteristics. Ecological Applications 9(2):642-655.
- Dunham, J.B., B.E. Rieman, and G. Chandler. 2003. Influence of temperature and environmental variables on the distribution of bull trout within streams at the southern margin of its range. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 23:894-904.

- Federal Energy Regulatory Agency. 1996. The Cushman Hydroelectric Project (FERC Project No. 460). Final Environmental Impact Statement. Washington, D.C.
- FFR (Forest and Fish Report). 1999. Recommendations to the Washington Forest Practices Board submitted by a consortium of landowners, Tribes, State, and Federal agencies. Unpublished report is available from the Washington Department of Natural Resources, Olympia, Washington.
- Fraleley, J.J., and B.B. Shepard. 1989. Life history, ecology and population status of migratory bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) in the Flathead Lake and River system, Montana. *Northwest Science* 63(4): 133-143.
- Franklin, I.R. 1980. Evolutionary changes in small populations. Pages 135–149 in M.E. Soule and B.A. Wilcox, eds. *Conservation biology: an evolutionary-ecological perspective*. Sinauer Associates, Sunderland, Massachusetts.
- Frissell, C.A. 1993. Topology of extinction and endangerment of native fishes in the Pacific Northwest and California. *Conservation Biology* 7(2):342–354.
- Frissell, C.A. 1999. An ecosystem approach to habitat conservation for bull trout: groundwater and surface water protection. Open File Report 15699. Flathead Lake Biological Station, The University of Montana, Polson.
- Gamett, B. 1999. The history and status of fishes in the Little Lost River drainage, Idaho. Salmon-Challis National Forest, Idaho Department of Fish and Game, U.S. Bureau of Land Management, Sagewillow, Inc. May 1999 draft.
- Gerking, S.D. 1998. *Feeding ecology of fish*. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

- Goetz, F. 1989. Biology of the bull trout, *Salvelinus confluentus*, a literature review. Willamette National Forest. Eugene, Oregon.
- Greene, P.M., N. Billington, and P.D.N. Nebert. 1990. Phylogenetic relationships among members of *Salvelinus* inferred from mitochondrial DNA divergence. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 47:984-991.
- Haas, G. 2001. An at-risk assessment of Dolly Varden through a field study comparison of habitat and maximum temperature preferences with bull trout. *In* Brewin, M.K., A.J. Paul, M. Monita, eds. Bull Trout II Conference Proceedings, Trout Unlimited Canada, Calgary, Alberta.
- Haas, G.R., and J.D. McPhail. 1991. Systematics and distributions of Dolly Varden (*Salvelinus malma*) and bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) in North America. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 48:2191-2211.
- Haas, G.R., and J.D. McPhail. 2001. Errors in and problems with the identification of bull trout and Dolly Varden. Pages 75-76 *in* Brewin, M.K., A.J. Paul, and M. Monita, editors. Bull trout II conference proceedings. Trout Unlimited Canada, Calgary, Alberta.
- Hanski, I.A., and M.E. Gilpin (editors). 1997. Metapopulation biology. Academic Press, San Diego, California.
- Hiss, J.M., and E.E. Knudsen. 1993. Chehalis River Basin fishery resources: status, trends, and restoration. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Western Washington Fishery Resource Office, Olympia. 128 pp.
- Hiss, J.M., and R.C. Wunderlich. 1994. Salmonid availability and migration in the middle Elwha River system. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Western Washington Fishery Resource Office, Olympia.
- Hoelscher, B., and T.C. Bjornn. 1989. Habitat, density, and potential production of trout and char in Pend Oreille Lake tributaries. Project F-710R-10, Subproject III, Job No. 8. Idaho Department of Fish and Game, Boise, Idaho.

- Hood Canal Technical Work Group. 1995. Shellfish and finfish— resources at risk in the Hood Canal watershed. Prepared for the Hood Canal Coordinating Council, Olympia, Washington.
- Howell, P.J., and D.V. Buchanan. 1992. Proceedings of the Gearhart Mountain Bull Trout Workshop. Oregon Chapter of the American Fisheries Society, Corvallis, Oregon.
- Jamestown S’Klallam Tribe. 2003. Restoring the Dungeness. An overview of the Dungeness River restoration strategy. Sequim, Washington.
- Jeanes, E., C.M. Morello, and M.H. Appy. 2003. Native char utilization, lower Chehalis River and Grays Harbor estuary, Aberdeen, Washington. Prepared for U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Seattle District by R2 Resource Consultants, Redmond, Washington.
- Kanda, N., and F. Allendorf. 2001. Genetic population structure of bull trout from the Flathead River basin as shown by microsatellites and mitochondrial DNA markers. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 130:92-106.
- Keizer, L., ed. 1990. Henning’s Washington Fishing Guide. Helstrom Publications, Inc. Portland, Oregon.
- Kimura, M., and J.F. Crow. 1963. The measurement of effective population number. *Evolution* 17:279-288.
- Kirk, R. 1992. The Olympic rain forest: an ecological web. *With* Jerry Franklin. University of Washington Press by Perpetua Press, Los Angeles, California.
- Kraemer, C. 1994. Some observations on the life history and behavior of the native char, Dolly Varden (*Salvelinus malma*) and bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) of the north Puget Sound region. Draft. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia.

- Lande, R. 1988. Genetics and demography in biological conservation. *Science* 241:1455–1460.
- Leary, R.F., and F.W. Allendorf. 1997. Genetic confirmation of sympatric bull trout and Dolly Varden in western Washington. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 126:715–720.
- Leathe, S.A., and P. Graham. 1982. Flathead Lake fish food habits study. Environmental Protection Agency, through Steering Committee for the Flathead River Basin Environmental Impact Study. Contract R008224-01-4 to Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife, and Parks.
- Lee, W.C. and E.P. Bergersen. 1996. Influence of thermal and oxygen stratification on lake trout hooking mortality. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 16(1):175-181.
- MBTSG (The Montana Bull Trout Scientific Group). 1998. The relationship between land management activities and habitat requirements of bull trout. Prepared for the Montana Bull Trout Restoration Team, Montana Fish, Wildlife, and Parks, Helena, MT. May 1998.
- Markle, D.F. 1992. Evidence of bull trout \times brook trout hybrids in Oregon. *In* P.L. Howell and D.V. Buchanan, eds. *Proceedings of the Gerhard Mountain bull trout workshop*. Oregon Chapter American Fisheries Society, Corvallis.
- McHenry, M.L., Lower Elwha S'Klallam Tribe. In preparation. Fisheries habitat module. Appendix F. *In* Hoh River watershed analysis. Middle Hoh and rainforest watershed analysis units. Level 2. Washington Department of Natural Resources, Olympia.
- McHenry, M. 2002. Elwha River temperature monitoring: 1992–2001 summary. Elwha Klallam Tribe, Port Angeles, Washington.

- McHenry, M.L., E. Schoot, R.H. Conrad, and G.B. Grette. 1998. Changes in the quantity and characteristics of large woody debris in streams of the Olympic Peninsula, Washington, USA. *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences* 55:1395–1407.
- McLeod, K., editor. 1944. Fishing guide to the Northwest. Sixth Edition. Western Publishing Co., Inc., Seattle, Washington.
- McPhail, J.D., and J.S. Baxter. 1996. A review of bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) life-history and habitat use in relation to compensation and improvement opportunities. Fisheries Management Report No. 104. Dept of Zoology, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, British Columbia.
- McPhail, J.D., and C.B. Murray. 1979. The life-history and ecology of Dolly Varden (*Salvelinus malma*) in the upper Arrow Lakes. Report to B.C. Hydro and Power Authority and Kootenay Region Fish and Wildlife. Nelson, British Columbia. 113 pp.
- Meffe, G.K. and C.R. Carroll. 1994. Principles of conservation biology. Sinauer Associates, Inc., Sunderland, Massachusetts.
- Mongillo, P.E. 1993. The distribution and status of bull trout/Dolly Varden in Washington State. June 1992. Fisheries Management Report 93–22. Washington Department of Wildlife, Olympia.
- Mongillo, P.E., and M. Hallock. 1993. Native trout and char investigations. Federal Aid Project F107R. Annual report July 1, 1992–June 10, 1993. Submitted to the United States Fish and Wildlife Service Federal Aid in Fish Restoration Program. Washington State Department of Wildlife, Olympia.
- Mongillo, P.E., and M. Hallock. 1997. Distribution and habitat of native nongame stream fishes of the Olympic Peninsula, Washington. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia.

- Morrill, D.C. and M.L. McHenry. 1995. 1994 Elwha River fish community study draft report. Lower Elwha S'Klallam Tribe, Fisheries Department. Port Angeles, Washington.
- Murphy, M.L. 1995. Forestry impacts on freshwater habitat of anadromous salmonids in the Pacific Northwest and Alaska—requirements for protection and restoration. NOAA Coastal Ocean Program Decision Analysis Series No. 7. NOAA Coastal Ocean Office, Silver Spring, Maryland. 156 pp.
- Myrick, C.A., F.T. Barrow, J.B. Dunham, B.L. Gamett, G. Haas, J.T. Peterson, B. Rieman, L.A. Weber, and A.V. Zale. 2002. Bull trout temperature thresholds. Peer review summary prepared for U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.
- NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 1991. Final rule for endangered status of Snake River sockeye salmon. November 20, 1991. Federal Register 56:58619.
- Nehlsen, W., J.E. Williams, and J.A. Lichatowich. 1991. Pacific salmon at the crossroads: Stocks at risk from California, Oregon, Idaho, and Washington. Fisheries 16:4-21.
- Nelson, T.C. and P.A. Caverhill. 1999. Chilliwack Lake char angler survey 1998. LGL Limited environmental research associates report to B.C. Ministry of Environment, Lands, and Parks, Lower Mainland Region, Fish and Wildlife Management, Surrey, B.C.
- Ogg, L.W., and M.R. Stutsman. 2002. Summary report of the Olympic National Forest bull trout recovery project 1995–2001. Unpublished report. Hood Canal Ranger District, U.S. Forest Service, Hoodport, Washington.
- Ogg, L.W., and Taiber, A. 2002. Life history characteristics of bull trout in the South Fork Skokomish River, Washington. Olympic National Forest, U.S. Forest Service, Hoodport, Washington.

- O'Toole, M.D., D. Penttila, and K. Stick. 2000. A review of stock discreteness in Puget Sound herring. A briefing statement, draft. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Fish Management Program, Marine Resources Division, Forage Fish/Shellfish Unit, La Conner, Washington.
- Pauley, G.B., and G.L. Thomas. 1993. Mortality of anadromous coastal cutthroat trout caught with artificial lures and natural bait. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 13(2):337-345.
- Peterson, J., J. Dunham, P. Howell, R. Thurow, and S. Bonar. 2002. Protocol for determining bull trout presence. Western Division of the American Fisheries Society.
- Phillips, R.B., K.A. Pleyte, and P.E. Ihssen. 1989. Patterns of chromosomal nuclear organizer region (NOR) variation in fishes of the genus *Salvelinus*. *Copeia* 1989:47-53.
- Phinney, L.A. and P. Bucknell. 1975. A catalog of Washington streams and salmon utilization. Volume 2: coastal region. Washington Department of Fisheries, Olympia.
- Pleyte, K. A., S. D. Duncan, and R. B. Phillips. 1992. Evolutionary relationships of the salmonid fish genus *Salvelinus* inferred from DNA sequences of the first internal transcribed spacer (ITS1) of ribosomal DNA. *Molec. Phyl. Evol.* 1:223-230.
- Post, G. 1987. Textbook of fish health. T.F.H. Publications, Neptune City, New Jersey.
- Pratt, K.L. 1984. Habitat use and species interactions of juvenile cutthroat, *Salmo clarki*, and bull trout, *Salvelinus confluentus*, in the upper Flathead River basin. M.S. Thesis, University of Idaho, Moscow, Idaho.

- Pratt, K.L. 1992. A review of bull trout life history. Pages 5-9. *In* Howell, P.J. and D.V. Buchanan, editors. Proceedings of the Gearhart Mountain bull trout workshop. Oregon Chapter of the American Fisheries Society, Corvallis, Oregon.
- Pratt, K.L., and J.E. Huston. 1993. Status of bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) in lake Pend Oreille and the lower Clark Fork River. Draft report. Prepared for the Washington Water Power Company, Spokane, Washington.
- Puget Sound Water Quality Action Team (PSWQAT). 2000. 2000 Puget Sound update: seventh report of the Puget Sound ambient monitoring program. Puget Sound Water Quality Action Team. Olympia, Washington.
- Quigley, T.M., and S.J. Arbelbide, tech. eds. 1997. An assessment of ecosystem components in the interior Columbia Basin and portions of the Klamath and Great Basins: Volume III. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Research Station, Portland, Oregon.
- Quigley, T.M., R.W. Haynes and R.T. Graham, technical editors. 1996. Integrated scientific assessment for ecosystem management in the interior Columbia Basin and portions of the Klamath and Great Basins. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Research Station. Portland, Oregon.
- Quinault Indian Nation. 2000. Salmon River watershed analysis. Quinault Indian Nation, Taholah, Washington.
- Quinault Indian Nation and USDA Forest Service. 1999. Quinault River watershed analysis. Olympia, Washington.
- Rashin, E., C. Clishe, A. Loch, and J. Bell. 1999. Effectiveness of forest road and timber harvest best management practices with respect to sediment-related water quality impacts. Publication no. 99-317. Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia.

- Ratliff, D.E., and P.L. Howell. 1992. The status of bull trout populations in Oregon. Pages 10–17 *in*: Howell, P.L. and D.V. Buchanan, eds. Proceedings of the Gerhard Mountain bull trout workshop. Oregon Chapter of the American Fisheries Society, Corvallis.
- Reisenbichler, R. 1999. Elwha River ecosystem restoration: potential effects and restoration methods fisheries investigations. U.S. Geological Survey, Western Fisheries Center, Seattle, Washington.
- Rich, C.F., Jr. 1996. Influence of abiotic and biotic factors on occurrence of resident bull trout in fragmented habitats, western Montana. M.S. thesis, Montana State University, Bozeman, Montana.
- Rieman, B., and F. Allendorf. 2001. Effective population size and genetic conservation criteria for bull trout. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 21:256–264.
- Rieman, B.E., and J.B. Dunham. 2000. Metapopulations and salmonids: a synthesis of life history patterns and empirical observations. *Ecology of Freshwater Fish* 9:51-64.
- Rieman, B.E. and J.D. McIntyre. 1993. Demographic and habitat requirements for conservation of bull trout. United States Department of Agriculture Forest Service, Intermountain Research Station, General Technical Report INT-302, Ogden, Utah.
- Rieman, B.E., and J.D. McIntyre. 1995. Occurrence of bull trout in naturally fragmented habitat patches of varied size. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 124:285-296.
- Rieman, B.E., and J.D. McIntyre. 1996. Spatial and temporal variability in bull trout redd counts. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 16:132-146.

- Rieman, B.E., D.C. Lee, and R.F. Thurow. 1997. Distribution, status and likely future trends of bull trout within the Columbia River and Klamath River basins. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 17:1111-1125.
- Robins, C.R., R.M. Bailey, C.E. Bond, J.R. Brooker, E.H. Lachner, R.N. Lea, and W.B. Scott. 1980. A list of common and scientific names of fishes from the United States and Canada. American Fisheries Society Special Publication 12, Bethesda, Maryland.
- Saunders, D.A., R.J. Hobbs, and C.R. Margules. 1991. Biological consequences of ecosystem fragmentation: A review. *Conservation Biology* 5:18-32.
- Schill, D.J. 1996. Hooking mortality of bait-caught rainbow trout in an Idaho trout stream and a hatchery: Implications for special-regulation management. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 16(2):348-356.
- Schill, D.J. and R.L. Scarpella. 1997. Barbed hook restriction in catch-and-release trout fisheries: A social issue. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 17(4):873-881.
- Schreiner, E. G., K. A. Kreuger, P. J. Happe, and D. B. Houston. 1996. Understory patch dynamics and ungulate herbivory in old-growth forests of Olympic National Park, Washington. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 26:255-265.
- Sedell, J.R., and F.H. Everest. 1991. Historic changes in pool habitat for Columbia River Basin salmon under study for TES listing. Draft U.S. Department of Agriculture Report, Pacific Northwest Research Station, Corvallis, Oregon.
- Sedell, J.R., F.N. Leone, and W.S. Duval. 1991. Water transportation and storage of logs. American Fisheries Society Special Publication 19:325-368.

- Sexauer, H.M., and P.W. James. 1997. Microhabitat use by juvenile trout in four streams located in the eastern Cascades, Washington. Pages 361-170. *In* W.C. MacKay, M.K. Brewin, and M. Monita, editors. Friends of the Bull Trout Conference Proceedings. Bull Trout Task Force (Alberta), c/o Trout Unlimited Calgary, Alberta, Canada.
- Shaffer, J.A., R. Moriarty, J. Sikes, and D. Penttila. 2003. Nearshore habitat mapping of the central and western Strait of Juan de Fuca Phase 2; final report. Clallam County Grant No G0200316. Washington Department of Fisheries, Port Angeles, Washington.
- Shared Strategy. 2002. A shared strategy for recovery of salmon in Puget Sound. Revised draft, June 29, 2001, step dates revised September 25, 2000. Shared Strategy for Puget Sound, Seattle, Washington.
- Simenstad, C.A., W. J. Kinney, S. S. Parker, E. O. Salo, J R. Cordell, and H. Buechner. 1980. Prey community structure and trophic ecology of outmigrating juvenile chum and pink salmon in Hood Canal, Washington. Final Report FRI-UW-8026. University of Washington, Fisheries Research Institute, Seattle.
- Simenstad, C.A., and D.M. Eggers. 1981. Juvenile salmonid and baitfish distribution, abundance, and prey resources in selected areas of Grays Harbor, Washington. Prepared for U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. Seattle District, Seattle.
- Simpson, J.C., and R.L. Wallace. 1982. Fishes of Idaho. University of Idaho Press, Moscow, Idaho.
- Simpson Timber Company. 2000. Habitat conservation plan. Simpson Timber Company, Northwest Operations. Shelton, Washington.
- Soulé, M. E. 1980. Thresholds for survival: maintaining fitness and evolutionary potential. Pages 151-170 *in* M.E. Soulé and B.A. Wilcox, eds. Conservation biology: An evolutionary-ecological perspective. Sinauer and Associates, Sunderland, Massachusetts.

- Spence, B.C., G.A. Lomnicky, R.M. Hughs, and R.P. Novitzki. 1996. An ecosystem approach to salmonid conservation. TR-4501-96-6057. ManTech Environmental Research Services Corp., Corvallis, Oregon. (Available from the National Marine Fisheries Service, Portland, Oregon.)
- Spruell, P., and A.N. Maxwell. 2002. Genetic analysis of bull trout and Dolly Varden in Washington. Report to the United States Fish and Wildlife Service and the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. WTSG 02-101. Wild Salmon and Trout Genetics Lab, University of Montana, Missoula.
- Spruell, P., B.E. Rieman, K.L. Knudsen, F.M. Utter, and F.W. Allendorf. 1999. Genetic population structure within streams: microsatellite analysis of bull trout populations. *Ecology of Freshwater Fish* 8:114-121.
- Spruell, P., A.R. Hemmingsen, P.J. Howell, N. Kanda, and F. Allendorf. 2003. Conservation genetics of bull trout: Geographic distribution of variation at microsatellite loci. *Conservation Genetics* 4:17-29.
- Storm, J.M., D. Chance, J. Harp. K.Harp, L. Lestelle, S.C. Sotomish, and L. Workman. 1990. P.K. Capoeman.ed., Land of the Quinault. Quinault Indian Nation, Taholah, WA.
- Taylor, J.J. and K.R. White. 1992. A meta-analysis of hooking mortality of nonanadromous trout. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 12(4):760-766.
- Taylor, E.B., S. Pollard, and D. Louie. 1999. Mitochondrial DNA variation in bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) from northwestern North America: implications for zoogeography and conservation. *Molecular Ecology* 8:1155-1170.
- Thorpe, J.E. 1994. Salmonid Fishes and the Estuarine Environment. *Estuaries* 17(1A):76-93.

- Trombulak, S.C., and C.A. Frissell. 2000. Review of ecological effects of roads on terrestrial and aquatic communities. *Conservation Biology* 14(1):18–30.
- Underwood, T.J., M.J. Millard, and L.A. Thorpe. 1996. Relative abundance, length frequency, age and maturity of Dolly Varden in nearshore waters of the Arctic National Wildlife Refuge, Alaska. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 125:719–728.
- USDA (U.S. Department of Agriculture). 1995a. Matheny Creek watershed analysis. USDA Forest Service, Olympic National Forest, Quinault Ranger District, Olympia, Washington.
- USDA (U.S. Department of Agriculture). 1995b. South Fork Skokomish watershed analysis. USDA Forest Service, Olympic National Forest, Hood Canal Ranger District, Hoodspport, Washington.
- USDA (U.S. Department of Agriculture). 1995c. Dungeness area watershed analysis, including Gray Wolf River and MacDonald, Siebert, and Johnson Creek. Prepared by Dungeness Area Watershed Analysis Cooperative Team. USDA Forest Service, Olympic National Forest, Olympia, Washington. 234 pp.
- USDA (U.S. Department of Agriculture). 1997. Sams River watershed analysis. USDA Forest Service, Olympic National Forest, Quinault Ranger District, Olympia, Washington.
- USDA (U.S. Department of Agriculture) and USDI (U.S. Department of the Interior). 1994a. Final supplemental environmental impact statement on management of habitat for late-successional and old-growth forest related species within the range of the northern spotted owl. U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of the Interior, Washington, D.C. 2 volumes and appendices.

- USDA (U.S. Department of Agriculture) and USDI (U.S. Department of the Interior). 1994b. Record of decision for amendments to Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management planning documents within the range of the northern spotted owl. U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of the Interior, Washington, D.C.
- USDA (U.S. Department of Agriculture) and USDI (U.S. Department of the Interior). 1997. Interior Columbia River Basin Ecosystem Management Project, Upper Columbia River Basin Draft Environmental Impact Statement. Volumes I-III.
- USDI (U.S. Department of the Interior), U.S. Department of Commerce, and Washington Department of Natural Resources). 1996b. Draft Environmental Impact Statement, Habitat Conservation Plan. Issued March 22, 1996. Olympia, Washington.
- USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2003. EPA region 10 guidance for Pacific Northwest State and Tribal temperature water quality standards. Final draft April 21, 2003. Seattle, Washington.
- USFWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). 1983a. Endangered and Threatened Species Listing and Recovery Priority Guidance. Federal Register 48(184):43098-43105.
- USFWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). 1983b. Endangered and Threatened Species Listing and Recovery Priority Guidelines Correction. Federal Register 48(221):51985.
- USFWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). 2002. Chapter 1, Introduction. *In*: Bull Trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) Draft Recovery Plan. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, Oregon. 137 p.
- USFWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). In preparation. Multiple-year seasonal movement of migratory bull trout in the Wenatchee River Basin, Washington. Mid-Columbia River Fisheries Resource Office, Leavenworth, Washington.

- Volk, E.C. 2000. Using otolith strontium to infer migratory histories in bull trout and Dolly Varden from several Washington State rivers. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.
- WDF (Washington Department of Fisheries), (WDW) Washington Department of Wildlife, and Western Washington treaty Indian Tribes. 1993. 1992 Washington State salmon and steelhead stock inventory. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, Olympia, Washington.
- WDFW (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife), FishPro Inc., and Beak Consultants. 1997. Grandy Creek trout hatchery biological assessment. March 1997. Olympia, Washington.
- WDFW (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife). 1998. Washington State Salmonid Stock Inventory- Bull Trout/Dolly Varden. Olympia, Washington.
- WDFW (Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife). 2000. Critical spawning habitat for herring, surf smelt, sand lance, and rock sole in Puget Sound, Washington. Prepared by Fish Program, Olympia, Washington.
- WDNR (Washington Department of Natural Resources). 1997. Final habitat conservation plan. Olympia, Washington.
- WDOE (Washington Department of Ecology). 1999. Introduction to Washington Shoreline Management Act (RW 90.58). Ecology Publication 99-1113. Olympia, Washington.
- WDOE (Washington Department of Ecology). 2002. Evaluating standards for protecting aquatic life in Washington's surface water quality standards. Temperature criteria. Draft discussion paper and literature summary. Revised December 2002. Publication number 00-10-070. Olympia, Washington.

- WDW (Washington Department of Wildlife). 1992. Bull trout/Dolly Varden management and recovery plan. Draft. Report No. 92-22. Olympia, Washington.
- WGSRO (Washington Governor's Salmon Recovery Office). 1999. Statewide strategy to recovery salmon, extinction is not an option. Olympia, Washington.
- WSSC (Washington State Conservation Commission). 1999. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors. Water resources inventory area 19: Western Juan de Fuca watershed.
- WSSC (Washington State Conservation Commission). 2000a. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors. Water resources inventory area 18: Dungeness/Elwha watershed.
- WSSC (Washington State Conservation Commission). 2000b. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors. Watershed resources inventory area 20: north coast streams.
- WSSC (Washington State Conservation Commission). 2001. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors. Watershed resources inventory area 21: Queets/Quinault watershed.
- WSSC (Washington State Conservation Commission). 2003. Salmon and steelhead habitat limiting factors. Water Resources Inventory Area 16: Skokomish/Dosewallips watersheds.
- Washington Forest Practices Board. 2001. Washington forest practices: rules—WAC 222 (including emergency rules), board manual (watershed manual not included), Forest Practices Act, RCW 76.09. Washington Forest Practices Board, Olympia.
- Watson, G., and T.W. Hillman. 1997. Factors affecting the distribution and abundance of bull trout: an investigation at hierarchical scales. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 17:237-252.

- Werdon, S.J. 2000. Jarbidge River watershed stream temperature monitoring 1999. Preliminary draft December 1, 2000. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Nevada Fish and Wildlife Office, Reno, Nevada. 10 pp. + appendices.
- Weyerhaeuser and Simpson Timber Company. 1995. Draft West Satsop watershed analysis. Tacoma and Shelton, Washington.
- Williams, R.N., R.P. Evans, and D.K. Shiozawa. 1997. Mitochondrial DNA diversity in bull trout from the Columbia River basin. Pages 283-297 *in* W.C. Mackay, M.K. Brewin, and M. Monita, editors. Friends of the Bull Trout Conference Proceedings. Bull Trout Task Force, Trout Unlimited, Calgary, Alberta, Canada.
- Wilson, M.F. 1997. Variation in salmonid life histories: patterns and perspectives. Research Paper PNW-RP-498. Portland, OR: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Research Station. 50 p.
- Wunderlich, R.C., and S.J. Dilley. 1985. An assessment of juvenile coho passage mortality at the Elwha River dams. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Olympia, Washington.

In Literature

- Baxter, C., and C. Torgersen. 2003. Peer review of the USFWS proposed critical habitat rule and draft recovery plan for bull trout in the Columbia and Klamath River basins.
- Brenkman, S., Olympic National Park. 2003a. Additions to recovery plan 13 January 2003.
- Brenkman, S., Olympic National Park. 2003b. Protocol development to conduct a populations estimate of federally threatened bull trout in the North Fork Skokomish River, Olympic National Park. Submitted to U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Lacey, Washington, July 2003. Port Angeles, Washington.

- Brenkman, S. and S. Corbett, Olympic National Park. 2003a. Seasonal movements of threatened bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) in the Hoh River basin and coastal Washington. Abstract. Northwest Scientific Association meeting 2003, Forks, Washington.
- Brenkman, S. and S. Corbett, Olympic National Park. 2003b. Radio tracking of bull trout in the Hoh basin and coastal Washington. Flight summary for 04/25/03. Draft.
- Brenkman, S., and J. Meyer. Olympic National Park. 2001. Data sources related to native char distributions in the Elwha, North Fork Skokomish, and Hoh River basins, Olympic National Park, Washington.
- Burley, C., Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 1997. Letter to Leslie Propp, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, addressing questions and comments about the draft "Washington State Salmonid Stock Inventory: Bull Trout/Dolly Varden. Olympia, Washington.
- Chan, Jeffrey R., U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2001. Collection report for activities conducted under scientific collection permit number 00-305. 2000 *Salvelinus confluentus* Curiosity Society Workshop. Lacey, Washington.
- Dachtler, N. U.S. Forest Service. 2001. Data form for recording bull trout/Dolly Varden observation by Nate Dachtler in June 1995, reported to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, of bull trout captured in the Humptulips River.
- Ereth, Marty. Skokomish Tribe. 2002. Documentation of observation for bull trout by Marty Ereth. February 14, 2002 in the Wishkah River at river mile 22.8. Documentation of observation of bull trout by Paul Peterson to Marty Ereth. August 20, 2002 in Skokomish River at river mile 2.0.
- Ereth, Marty. Skokomish Tribe. 2003. Data form recording bull trout mortality resulting from angler in the South Fork Skokomish 03/03/03.

- Freudenthal, J. Jefferson County. 2001a. Data form for recording bull trout/Dolly Varden observation by Joel Freudenthal May 1999 in Siebert Creek.
- Freudenthal, J. Jefferson County. 2001b. Data form for recording bull trout/Dolly Varden observation by Joel Freudenthal October 1997 in Bell Creek.
- Freymond, B. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2001. Data form for recording bull trout/Dolly Varden observation by Bill Freymond in mid-1990's in Goodman Creek at river mile 1.4.
- Gilpin, M., University of California, San Diego. 1997. Bull trout connectivity on the Clark Fork River, letter to Shelley Spalding, Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, Helena, Montana.
- Gross, M. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2002. Bull trout investigations on the northern Washington coast. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. Field work in fall of 2001.
- Harza Northwest, Inc. Response to November 28, 1990 JRP comments. Cushman Hydroelectric Project FERC No. 460. City of Tacoma, Washington.
- Haw, F. A and R.M. Buckley. 1973. Saltwater fishing in Washington. Stan Jones Publishing. Seattle, Washington.
- Jeanes, E. R2 Resource Consultants, Inc. Spring-summer lower Chehalis/Grays Harbor Estuary Report. Memorandum July 28, 2003.
- Kraemer, C. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2003. Lower Skagit bull trout. Age and growth information developed from scales collected from anadromous and fluvial char. Management brief for Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife.

- McHenry, M.L., Lower Elwha S'Klallam Tribe. 2003. 1996 Little River temperature data.
- Mayhall, L.E., Washington Department of Fisheries Inspector. 1926. Report on the North Fork Skokomish River describing operation of Cushman Dam as blocking passage and eventually eliminating the North Fork Skokomish spring Chinook run and eliminating the steelhead run, except for those fish that spawn in the lower river.
- Meyer, J. Olympic National Park. 2001. Data form for recording bull trout/Dolly Varden observations by John Meyer in the time around 1982-1985 of a single char in Quilcene River at river mile 0.5.
- Moore, M., Washington Department of Fisheries. 1948. Letter to Mayor and Tacoma City Council attributing the interference with migration and sharp decline in the salmon population to construction of the Cushman power dam.
- NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 2000. Recovery planning guidance for technical recovery teams. September 2000 draft.
- NOAA (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration). 2003. Endangered Species Act status of West Coast salmon and steelhead. Updated August 8, 2002.
- Olympic National Forest. 2003. Data for SF Skokomish Tribes 1995–2001.
- Olympic National Park. 2001. Unpublished data. Port Angeles, Washington.
- Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team. 2001. Meeting notes from 10/11/01 at U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Lacey, Washington.. Matrix of core area existing conditions.
- Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team. 2002. Meeting notes from 10/29/02 at U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Lacey, Washington. Bull trout stomach samples.

- Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team. 2003a. Meeting notes from 01/14/03 at U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Lacey, Washington. Recovered and current abundance for core areas. Designation of local populations and potential local populations. Elwha Dam removal salvage.
- Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team. 2003b. Meeting notes from 03/05/03 at U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Lacey, Washington. Importance of anadromous reaches within foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat for bull trout.
- Olympic Peninsula Recovery Team. 2003c. Meeting notes from 03/12/03 at U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Lacey, Washington. Importance of independent rivers and creeks (outside core area) as foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat and reasons bull trout likely do not use for spawning.
- Peters, Roger, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2001. Data form for recording bull trout/Dolly Varden observation by Roger Peters on 07/07/93, reported to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, of a single char in the Clearwater River at river mile 30.0.
- Peters, R., U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1997. Unpublished data. Notes and unpublished data of bull trout observations for the Dungeness River. Olympia, Washington.
- Pollock, Charles R., Division of Fisheries Supervisor. 1929. Letter sent to City of Tacoma hearing (submitted for Washington Department of Fisheries and Game) identifying construction Lake Cushman Dam as completely blocking salmon from reaching their natural spawning grounds in the North Fork Skokomish River.
- Powell, J. 1999. Cultural resources module. Middle Hoh watershed analysis. Washington Department of Natural Resources, Forks.
- Quinault Indian Nation. 2002. Unpublished data of bull trout captured while seining for salmon in the Queets River from 1977 to 1995.

- Stetson, J.H., Washington Department of Fisheries Officer. 1925. Letter to Charles R. Pollock, Acting Washington Department of Fisheries Supervisor, documenting intense fishing pressure on Chinook and steelhead being blocked from upstream passage and congregating below dam.
- Uehara, J., Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife resident/native fish program manager. 2002. Letter dated 12/20/02 stating that “the single observation of a juvenile char reported in 1997 was in all probability an arctic char that escaped from a fish farm.”
- U.S. Commission on Fish and Fisheries. 1913. Duckabush fish hatchery log.
- Washington State Department of Community, Trade, and Economic Development. No date. Growth Management. Overview of the Growth Management Act. Web Page <http://www.cted.wa.gov>
- Washington Department of Ecology (WDOE). 2001. Marine water quality monitoring from web page:
http://ecy.wa.gov/programs/eap/mar_wat/gradientofconcern.html
- Webster, J. U.S. Forest Service. 2001. Data form for recording bull trout/Dolly Varden observations in the Satsop River and Canyon River by Jay Webster.
- Young, B., Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife biologist, retired. 2003. A survey of the sport fishery on Lake Cushman, Mason County, Washington, during the 2002 season.
- Young, S., Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife geneticist. 2001. Char sample summary 03.27.01.

Personal Communications

- Ackley, Mike. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2002. Email to 05/23/02 to Scott Craig, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout capture in Willapa River.
- Banish, Nolan. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2002. Email 07/26/02 to Jeff Chan, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout observation in Matheny Creek.
- Brenkman, Sam. Olympic National Park. 2002a. Email 11/26/02 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout captures in lower Elwha on 9/14/01 and 12/08/01.
- Brenkman, Sam. Olympic National Park. 2002b. Email 11/12/02 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Future funding for bull trout research.
- Brenkman, Sam. Olympic National Park. 2003a. Email 01/21/2003 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout in Irely Lake.
- Brenkman, Sam. Olympic National Park. 2003b. Email to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Citations, including Hoh radio telemetry study, forage fish, black spot disease, and Elwha bull trout.
- Brenkman, Sam. Olympic National Park. 2003c. Email to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Comments on draft recovery plan and detection of Hoh River bull trout using Cedar Creek, Kalalloch Creek and mouth of the Queets River.
- Brenkman, Sam. Olympic National Park. 2004. Email to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Land mass on the Olympic Peninsula.

- Cooper, Randy. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2002. Email 11/12/02 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout redds in the Gray Wolf River.
- Cooper, Randy. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2003. Email 02/14/03 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Char catch at Ennis Creek.
- Corbett, Steve. Olympic National Park. 2004. Email to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Black spot disease in Hoh River bull trout.
- Craig, Scott. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2003. Email 03/3/03 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Native char observation Cook Creek.
- Deschamps, G. Fishery Biologist for the Chehalis Tribe (retired). 1997. telephone conversation 05/31/97 with Jeffery Chan, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.
- Freymond, Bill. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2003. Email 01/16/03 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout in Cedar Creek.
- Gamett, Barbara, U.S. Forest Service. 2002. Telephone conversation 06/20/02 with Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: relationship between water temperature and bull trout distribution and abundance in the Little Lost River, Idaho.
- Ging, Gwill. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2003. Email 02/13/03 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull Trout in Salmon River.
- Goetz, Fred, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Seattle District, Seattle, WA. 2002a. E-mail subject: re: more running of the Skagit bull trout.

- Goetz, Fred. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 2002b. Email 12/04/02 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout mixing in estuary and nearshore marine areas of Puget Sound.
- Hilgert, Phil. R2 Resource Consultants. 2000. Email 8/25/00 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout observations in Quilcene, Dosewallips, Duckabush, and Hamma Hamma.
- Hooper, Thom. NOAA Fisheries. 2004. Email 1/26/2004 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout in the Wynoochee River.
- McHenry, Mike. Lower Elwha S'Klallam Tribe. 2002a. Telephone Conversation 10/21/02 with Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout mortalities in the lower Elwha River.
- McHenry, Mike. Lower Elwha S'Klallam Tribe. 2002b. Email 11/26/02 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout observations while snorkeling in the lower Elwha River.
- McHenry, Mike. Lower Elwha S'Klallam Tribe. 2003. Email 02/06/03 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Elwha comments and angler observations in lower Elwha; WDFW capture of char in Ennis Creek smolt trap 1999.
- McMillan, John. Wild Salmon Center. 2002. Email 05/09/02 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout observation in Nolan Creek.
- Ogg, Larry. U. S. Forest Service. 2003a. Email 01/21/03 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Redd survey information for South Fork Skokomish River.
- Ogg, Larry. U. S. Forest Service. 2003b. Email 02/10/03 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout in South Fork Skokomish River tributaries.

- Ogg, Larry. U. S. Forest Service. 2003c. Email 06/05/03 to Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Water temperature for Satsop River and Brown Creek.
- Pess, George. NOAA Fisheries. 2003. Email 09/25/03 to Shelley Spalding, U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout observed in lower Elwha River.
- Potter, Scott. Quinault Indian Tribe. 2003. Personal conversation 3/21/2003 with Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout capture in Joe Creek.
- Travers, Greg. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2002. Email to Bill Freymond, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife. 12/06/02. Subject: Bull trout observations at Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife lower Elwha spawning/rearing channel.
- Webster, Jay. U.S. Forest Service. 2001. Personal conversation 05/09/01 with Shelley Spalding, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Subject: Bull trout in Satsop River.
- Werdon, Selena, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Reno, Nevada. 1998. Conversation with Sam Lohr, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Boise, Idaho, concerning bull trout observed by survey teams during the *Salvelinus confluentus* Curiosity Society meeting August 4-6, 1998.
- Zajac, Dave, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2002. Record to the file 02/15/02. Subject: Bull trout captured at Quinault National Fish Hatchery.

APPENDIX 1.

Olympic National Park: Angler effort and incidental catch records of bull trout in selected streams on the Olympic Peninsula.

Currently, there is very limited monitoring of Olympic Peninsula recreational fisheries and incidental bull trout caught and released. Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife conducts annual angler surveys and catch estimates in the Quillayute River system during the winter steelhead fishery, but the only documented char population in this watershed is a resident population of Dolly Varden upstream from Sol Duc Falls. There is limited information regarding catches of bull trout caught in several rivers originating in Olympic National Park. National Park Service rangers, volunteers, and fisheries technicians have surveyed anglers during various seasons on the Queets, Hoh, Quinault, Skokomish, and Elwha Rivers to gather basic information regarding species composition and catch rates (Table 6). All of these surveys occurred during or after 1994 when bull trout harvest was prohibited so species composition was based on the angler's ability to identify the fish. No estimates of total effort are available for most of these angler surveys and only catch per hour estimates of bull trout caught incidentally are available.

While seasonal data is lacking for most of these rivers, it is available for the Queets River where catches of bull trout per hour have been the highest during the summer months. The higher capture rates in the summer may be due to upstream migration of mature adults toward suspected staging and spawning areas in the upper watershed.

Catch per hour is relatively low in each of the reported rivers with the highest incidental capture rates recorded in the North Fork Skokomish River. Catch per hour estimates for the Hoh, Quinault, North Fork Skokomish, and lower Elwha Rivers were collected during the summers of 1994 and 1995. Queets River catches of bull trout caught in the summer were collected during 1994 and 1995 and fall catch data were collected in 1994, 1995, and 1998. Winter catch information for the Queets was gathered during the 1994–1995, 1995–1996, 1999–2000, 2000–2001, and 2001–2002 seasons. Summer, fall, and

winter surveys were conducted from June–August, September–November, and December–April, respectively.

Total effort and catches of bull trout can be estimated from angler surveys conducted by Olympic National Park on the Queets and Salmon Rivers. The Salmon River is a principal tributary to the Queets and supports substantial returns of hatchery Chinook salmon, coho salmon, and steelhead. Total incidental catch of bull trout during the Queets winter steelhead fishery has been estimated from angler surveys within the park since 1999. This fishery occurs from December – April 15 although restrictions have been implemented in some years to ensure adequate escapement of wild steelhead. The survey period usually begins in early to mid-December and extends through March or April, depending on availability of survey personnel and emergency closures. Incidental catches of bull trout during this fishery ranged from 9 during the 1999–2000 season to 86 in the 2001–2002 season (Table 7), which closed early (March 15) due to an emergency closure directed toward winter steelhead. All the bull trout reported in these surveys were released by the angler, and it was assumed that they could distinguish between the salmonid species present in the river. It was also assumed that anglers cooperated by reporting char when contacted by the surveyors.

Table 7. Mean catch of bull trout per hour as reported by anglers in several Olympic Peninsula Rivers.

River	Summer	Fall	Winter
Queets within Olympic National Park	.011	.004	.002
Hoh from the mouth to the Hoh	.008	—	—
Quinault upstream from Lake Quinault	.006	—	—
North Fork Skokomish River	.018	—	—
Lower Elwha downstream from Elwha	.010	—	—

Catches of bull trout in the Queets and Salmon Rivers (Table 8) showed little correlation to estimated total boat and bank angling effort (Table 9). Fishing effort on the Queets River varies widely between years based primarily on river conditions; the river is typically high and turbid for much of December and January. Fishing effort also varies with catch rates/abundance of winter steelhead, gear and harvest restrictions in effect, and fishing opportunities on other rivers in Puget Sound and the Washington Coast. Total estimated effort on the Queets River during the 1999–2000 through 2001–2002 seasons varied considerably, with high effort during the 1999–2000 season and lower levels of effort during the 2000–2001 and 2001–2002 seasons. The lower levels of effort in the latter two seasons may have been due in part to emergency restrictions on the harvest of steelhead.

Table 8. Estimated total catch of bull trout from the Queets and Salmon Rivers during the winter steelhead season of December–April, 1999–2000 through 2001–2002 seasons.

Season	December	January	February	March	April	Total Estimated Catch
1999–2000	0	9	0	0	No survey data	9
2000–2001	0 ¹	25	13	7	0	45
2001–2002	20 ²	20	29	17 ³	River closed	86

¹ Angler surveys began on December 16, does not include the period December 1–15.

² Angler surveys began on December 16, does not include the period December 1–15.

³ Angler surveys began on December 16, does not include the period December 1–15.

Table 9. Estimated hours of fishing by recreational anglers, Queets and Salmon Rivers during the 1999–2000 through 2001–2002 winter steelhead seasons.

Season	December	January	February	March	April	Total Angler Hours
1999–2000	5,144	5,644	19,787	11,980	No survey data	42,555
2000–2001	2,020 ¹	4,343	5,928	4,992	2,264	19,547
2001–2002	6,516 ²	3,121	3,467	3,327 ³	River closed	16,431

¹ Angler surveys began on December 16, does not include the period December 1–15.

² Angler surveys began on December 16, does not include the period December 1–15.

³ Angler surveys began on December 16, does not include the period December 1–15.

Sport fishing effort on coastal rivers, such as the Hoh and Queets River systems, have increased steadily over the past 10 years, although, effort on these rivers is largely a function of river conditions and availability of harvestable salmon and steelhead. It is also influenced by fishing restrictions in Puget Sound rivers. The number of fishing days during the winter steelhead season are often limited by rainfall and river flows. But, when the rivers are fishable, sport angling effort is generally high. Fishing effort on systems like the Dungeness and North Fork Skokomish Rivers is very low due to the very restrictive sport regulations in place. Most of these rivers, streams, and lakes on the Olympic Peninsula remain open to fishing for salmon, steelhead, and trout for much the year but current tackle restrictions are much more conservative than they were prior to 1994. Bait fishing is prohibited in all bull trout waters in the interior of Olympic National Park during the summer months when incidental catches may be highest. Most of these upper river areas retain bait bans throughout the entire year and many also restrict tackle to single barbless hooks.

APPENDIX 2.**State of Washington's 303(d) list for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, (as per section 303(d) of the Clean Water Act, 33 USC 1251 *et seq.*).**

(Based on the Washington Department of Ecology 303(d) List website:

http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/303d/1998/1998_by_wrias.html.

Locations of listed stream segments are not identified on the 303 (d) list.)

Within a local population	Stream Name	1996 List	1998 List	Pollutant(s)
Skokomish Core Area				
	Skokomish River	no	no	pH
	Skokomish River	yes	yes	Fecal coliform
No	Skobob Creek	no	no	Temperature
	Skokomish River	no	no	Dissolved oxygen
	Skokomish River, North Fork	no	yes	Temperature
	Skokomish River, North Fork	yes	yes	Instream flow
Dungeness Core Area				
	Dungeness River	yes	yes	Instream flow
	Dungeness River	no	no	Thallium
No	Matriotti Creek	yes	yes	Fecal coliform
Elwha Core Area				
	Elwha River	yes	yes	Temperature
	Elwha River	yes	yes	PCB-1254
No	Port Angeles Harbor	no	yes	Total PCBs

APPENDIX 2.**State of Washington's 303(d) list for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, (as per section 303(d) of the Clean Water Act, 33 USC 1251 *et seq.*).**

(Based on the Washington Department of Ecology 303(d) List website:

http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/303d/1998/1998_by_wrias.html.

Locations of listed stream segments are not identified on the 303 (d) list.)

Within a local population	Stream Name	1996 List	1998 List	Pollutant(s)
No	Port Angeles Harbor	no	no	pH
No	Port Angeles Harbor	yes	yes	Dissolved oxygen
Hoh Core Area				
No	Canyon Creek	yes	yes	Temperature
No	Line Creek	yes	yes	Temperature
No	Maple Creek	yes	yes	Temperature
No	Mosquito Creek	no	no	Temperature
No	Nolan Creek	yes	yes	Temperature
No	Owl Creek	yes	yes	Temperature
No	Rock Creek	yes	yes	Temperature
No	Willoughby Creek	yes	yes	Temperature
No	Winfield Creek	yes	yes	Temperature
No	Coal Creek	no	yes	Temperature
No	Alder Creek	yes	yes	Temperature

APPENDIX 2.**State of Washington's 303(d) list for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, (as per section 303(d) of the Clean Water Act, 33 USC 1251 *et seq.*).**

(Based on the Washington Department of Ecology 303(d) List website:

http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/303d/1998/1998_by_wrias.html.

Locations of listed stream segments are not identified on the 303 (d) list.)

Within a local population	Stream Name	1996 List	1998 List	Pollutant(s)
No	Anderson Creek	yes	yes	Temperature
Queets Core Area				
	Queets River	no	no	Dissolved oxygen
	Queets River	no	no	Temperature
	Queets River	no	no	Fecal coliform
Quinalt Core Area				
	Quinalt River	no	yes	Temperature
No	Red Creek	no	no	Temperature
Hood Canal and Independent Tributaries foraging, migration, overwintering habitat				
No	Hood Canal (South)	yes	yes	Fecal coliform
Strait of Juan de Fuca and Independent Tributaries foraging, migration, overwintering habitat				
No	Sequim Bay	no	no	Ammonia-N
No	Sequim Bay	yes	yes	Dissolved oxygen
No	Sequim Bay	yes	yes	pH
No	Sequim Bay	no	yes	Fecal coliform

APPENDIX 2.**State of Washington's 303(d) list for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, (as per section 303(d) of the Clean Water Act, 33 USC 1251 *et seq.*).**

(Based on the Washington Department of Ecology 303(d) List website:

http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/303d/1998/1998_by_wrias.html.

Locations of listed stream segments are not identified on the 303 (d) list.)

Within a local population	Stream Name	1996 List	1998 List	Pollutant(s)
No	Sequim Bay	no	no	Temperature
No	Bell Creek	yes	yes	Fecal coliform
No	Strait of Juan De Fuca (East)	no	no	Dissolved oxygen
No	Strait of Juan De Fuca (East)	no	no	Dioxin
Pacific Ocean and Coastal Streams foraging, migration, overwintering habitat				
No	Joe Creek	yes	yes	Dissolved oxygen
No	Joe Creek	yes	yes	Fecal coliform
No	Kalaloch Creek (W.F.)	yes	yes	Temperature
Lower Chehalis River/Grays Harbor foraging, migration, overwintering habitat				
No	Grays Harbor (Inner)	yes	yes	Fecal coliform
No	Grays Harbor (Inner)	no	no	Temperature

APPENDIX 2.**State of Washington's 303(d) list for the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit, (as per section 303(d) of the Clean Water Act, 33 USC 1251 *et seq.*).**

(Based on the Washington Department of Ecology 303(d) List website:

http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/303d/1998/1998_by_wrias.html.

Locations of listed stream segments are not identified on the 303 (d) list.)

Within a local population	Stream Name	1996 List	1998 List	Pollutant(s)
No	Grays Harbor (Inner)	no	no	Water column bioassay
No	Grays Harbor (Inner)	no	no	pH
No	Grays Harbor (Inner)	no	no	Dioxin
No	Grays Harbor (Outer)	no	no	Temperature
No	Grays Harbor (Outer)	no	no	Dissolved oxygen
No	Grays Harbor (Outer)	yes	yes	Fecal coliform
No	Humptulips River	yes	yes	Temperature
No	Chehalis River	yes	yes	Fecal coliform
No	Chehalis River	yes	yes	Temperature

APPENDIX 3.

Linkage between recovery actions and threats (“Reasons for Decline”) for bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

Action Number	Criteria Number(s)	Threats						
		Dams	Forest Management Practices	Agricultural Practices	Transportation Networks	Residential Development and Urbanization	Fisheries Management	Isolation and Habitat Fragmentation
1.1.1	1, 2, 3		X		X	X		X
1.1.2	1, 2, 3		X		X	X		
1.1.3	1, 2, 3		X	X	X			X
1.1.4	1, 2, 3		X		X	X		
1.1.5	1, 2, 3	X	X	X		X	X	
1.1.6	1, 2, 3	X	X	X	X	X		
1.1.7	1, 2, 3		X	X	X	X		
1.1.8	1, 2, 3		X		X			
1.1.9	1, 2, 3				X	X		
1.1.10	1, 2, 3					X		
1.1.11	1, 2, 3	X		X	X	X		
1.2.1	4	X		X			X	X
1.2.2	4	X		X			X	X
1.2.3	4		X		X			X
1.2.4	4	X					X	X
1.2.5	4	X					X	X

APPENDIX 3.

Linkage between recovery actions and threats (“Reasons for Decline”) for bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

Action Number	Criteria Number(s)	Threats						
		Dams	Forest Management Practices	Agricultural Practices	Transportation Networks	Residential Development and Urbanization	Fisheries Management	Isolation and Habitat Fragmentation
1.2.6	4	X		X				X
1.2.7	4			X				X
1.3.1	1, 2, 3		X	X	X	X		X
1.3.2	1, 2, 3		X	X	X	X		
1.3.3	1, 2, 3	X	X	X	X	X		
1.3.4	1, 2, 3		X	X	X	X		X
1.3.5	1, 2, 3			X	X	X		
1.3.6	1, 2, 3				X	X		
1.3.7	1, 2, 3				X	X		
1.3.8	1, 2, 3			X				
1.3.9	1, 2, 3	X	X	X	X	X		
1.3.10	1, 2, 3		X	X	X	X		
1.3.11	1, 2, 3		X					
1.3.12	1, 2, 3		X	X	X	X		
1.3.13	1, 2, 3		X				X	
1.3.14	1, 2, 3		X					
1.4.1	1, 2, 3	X						
1.4.2	1, 2, 3	X						

APPENDIX 3.

Linkage between recovery actions and threats (“Reasons for Decline”) for bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

Action Number	Criteria Number(s)	Threats						
		Dams	Forest Management Practices	Agricultural Practices	Transportation Networks	Residential Development and Urbanization	Fisheries Management	Isolation and Habitat Fragmentation
1.5.1	1, 2, 3		X					
1.5.2	1, 2, 3		X					
1.6.1	1, 2, 3	X	X		X	X		
2.1.1	1, 2, 3						X	
2.2.1	1, 2, 3						X	
2.3.1	1, 2, 3						X	
2.3.2	1, 2, 3						X	
2.4.1	1, 2, 3						X	
2.5.1	1, 2, 3						X	
2.5.2	1, 2, 3						X	
2.5.3	1, 2, 3						X	
3.1.1	1, 2, 3						X	
3.1.2	1, 2, 3						X	
3.2.1	1, 2, 3						X	
3.2.2	1, 2, 3						X	
3.2.3	1, 2, 3						X	
3.2.4	1, 2, 3						X	
3.2.5	1, 2, 3						X	

APPENDIX 3.

Linkage between recovery actions and threats (“Reasons for Decline”) for bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

Action Number	Criteria Number(s)	Threats						
		Dams	Forest Management Practices	Agricultural Practices	Transportation Networks	Residential Development and Urbanization	Fisheries Management	Isolation and Habitat Fragmentation
3.3.1	1, 2, 3						X	
3.3.2	1, 2, 3						X	
3.4.1	1, 2, 3						X	
3.4.2	1, 2, 3						X	
4.1.1	1, 2, 3, 4						X	X
4.2.1	1, 2, 3, 4						X	X
4.3.1	1, 2, 3, 4						X	X
4.3.2	1, 2, 3, 4						X	X
5.1.1	1, 2, 3						X	
5.1.2	1, 2, 3	X	X	X	X	X	X	
5.2.1	1, 2, 3						X	
5.2.2	1, 2, 3	X					X	X
5.2.3	1, 2, 3, 4						X	X
5.2.4	1, 2, 3		X	X		X	X	
5.2.5	1, 2, 3						X	
5.3.1	1, 2, 3		X	X		X		
5.3.2	1, 2, 3	X	X	X				
5.3.3	1, 2, 3		X	X				

APPENDIX 3.

Linkage between recovery actions and threats (“Reasons for Decline”) for bull trout in the Olympic Peninsula Management Unit.

Action Number	Criteria Number(s)	Threats						
		Dams	Forest Management Practices	Agricultural Practices	Transportation Networks	Residential Development and Urbanization	Fisheries Management	Isolation and Habitat Fragmentation
5.4.1	1, 2, 3						X	
5.5.1	1, 2, 3		X				X	
5.5.2	1, 2, 3						X	
5.5.3	1, 2, 3						X	
5.6.1	1, 2, 3, 4						X	X
6.1.1	1, 2, 3, 4	X	X	X	X	X		X
6.2.1	1, 2, 3	X	X	X	X	X		X
6.2.2	1, 2, 3, 4		X	X	X	X		
6.3.1	1, 2, 3, 4		X	X	X	X		X
7.1.1	1, 2, 3, 4	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
7.2.1	1, 2, 3	X	X	X	X	X	X	

APPENDIX 4.

Effective Population Size and Recovery Planning

Effective population size provides a standardized measure of the amount of genetic variation that is likely to be transmitted between generations within a population. Effective population size is a theoretical concept that allows one to predict potential future losses of genetic variation within a population due to small population size and genetic drift. Individuals within populations with very small effective population sizes are also subject to *inbreeding depression* because most individuals within small populations share one or more immediate ancestors (parents, grandparents, etc.) after only a few generations and will be closely related.

A number of factors affect the effective population size of a species. For example, unequal sex ratios can significantly affect effective population size because male and female adults of the parent generation must each contribute 50 percent of the genes to the progeny generation regardless of their relative numbers. Hence, effective population size will be lower than the summed census number of both sexes, and will also be less than four times as large as the number of adults of the less common sex. For example, a population derived from one male and three females would have an effective population size of three; a population derived from one male and an infinite number of females would have an effective population size of four (Crow and Kimura 1970). The latter population would experience the same amount of genetic drift as a population derived from only two males and two females. Similarly, populations with high fluctuations in abundance over time (or generations) will have an effective population size that is approximated by the harmonic mean of the effective population sizes of each generation. This harmonic mean will be influenced significantly by the generation with the lowest effective population size because that generation represents the “bottleneck” through which all genetic variation in future generations must pass.

It is relatively easy to relate effective population size to theoretical losses of genetic variation in future generations and, thus, provide conservation guidelines for effective population size. Based on standardized theoretical equations (Crow and Kimura 1970), the following guidelines have been

established for maintaining minimum effective population sizes for conservation purposes:

- Effective Population Size > 50 to prevent inbreeding depression and a potential decrease in viability or reproductive fitness of a population (Franklin 1980);
- Effective Population Size > 500 to minimize loss of genetic variation due to genetic drift and maintain constant genetic variance within a population resulting from a balance between loss of variance due to genetic drift and an increase in variance due to new mutations or gene migration (Franklin 1980; Soulé 1980; Lande 1988);
- Effective Population Size > 5,000 to maintain constant variance for quasi-neutral, genetic variation that can serve as a reservoir for future adaptations in response to natural selection and changing environmental conditions (Lande 1995). The rationale here is that the effective population size needs to be large enough to minimize genetic drift and the potential loss of genetic material that may confer a slight, selective advantage under existing or future environmental conditions.

In contrast to establishing conservation guidelines for effective population size, it is much more difficult to quantitatively relate the breeding structure of a species and census numbers of populations to effective population size so that the 50/500/5000 guidelines can be applied at the appropriate scale. The longevity, life histories, and structure of individual breeding units (*i.e., local populations*) must be understood sufficiently to relate the number of observed adults within a particular population (and in a particular generation) to a genetic *effective number of breeders*. Conceptually, this latter quantity will be similar to effective population size in the classical, textbook sense. Second, it is necessary to understand the amount of gene flow among geographically adjacent breeding units (*e.g., bull trout reproducing in adjacent tributaries to a river*) so that, over multiple-generation time-scales, effective breeding numbers at the local

population level can be considered part of a larger *metapopulation* with respect to applying the 50/500/5000 guidelines. For example, very small amounts of gene flow may not be sufficient to increase the effective number of breeders within a given local population above effective population equal to 50. However, in a combination of such populations that experience gene flow between them, effective breeding numbers for the metapopulation may be greater than 500. In this latter situation, one would predict significant genetic variation among breeding units and comparatively small amounts of genetic variation within individual breeding units, but the combination (or metapopulation) as a whole could potentially retain significant amounts of genetic variation over time. The key to understanding the evolutionary and conservation implications of such a breeding structure is knowing whether the individual breeding units, or local populations, are completely isolated reproductively or whether some gene flow does indeed occur, thus allowing genetic material to be reintroduced if lost from a particular population.

The effective population size $> 5,000$ rule derived by Lande (1995) relates largely to future evolutionary potential. Hence, the scale for its application are expected, in most cases, to be much larger than the spatial and temporal scales at which one applies the “50/500” rules. For example, the effective population size > 50 and effective population size > 500 guidelines may be most applicable on time scales encompassing 1 to 5 and 5 to 50 generations, respectively: at least two generations are necessary to produce “inbred” individuals after a population has gone through a major population bottleneck (*i.e.*, effective population size < 50), and a substantially greater number of generations are usually necessary for genetic drift to be significant (*i.e.*, when effective population size < 500). On the other hand, the effective population size $> 5,000$ guideline relates to the evolutionary persistence of a species over some defined geographic area such that, if extinction does occur, recolonization from elsewhere is precluded geographically or is unlikely to occur over microevolutionary time scales (*e.g.*, 50 or more generations).

Rieman and Allendorf (2001) have performed computer simulations of bull trout populations to understand the relationship between the observed number of adults, or spawners, within a local population and effective population size. Their best estimate of effective population size is 0.5 to 1.0 times the mean

number of adult fish spawning annually. This translates into maintaining between 50 and 100 spawners per year to minimize potential inbreeding effects within local populations. The spatial scale for such a local population would encompass all adult fish with approximately equal probability of interbreeding amongst themselves within a single year or generation. One would expect such a population to include very few immigrants from another population or breeding unit. Between 500 and 1,000 spawners per year would be needed to maintain genetic variation and minimize the deleterious effects of drift. The appropriate spatial for maintaining genetic variation for bull trout would be most frequently applied at the core area level.

APPENDIX 5.

Federal Legislation, Activities and Guidelines Affecting Bull Trout Recovery

Endangered Species Act. Bull trout in the coterminous United States occur on lands administered by the Federal Government (*e.g.*, Bureau of Land Management, Forest Service, and National Park Service), various State-owned properties, and private and Tribal lands. The majority of bull trout spawning and rearing habitat occurs on Federal lands. Federal agency actions that occur on Federal lands or elsewhere with Federal funds or authorization may require consultation under the Endangered Species Act (16 USC 1531 *et seq.*). These actions include U.S. Army Corps of Engineers involvement in projects such as the construction of roads and bridges, the permitting of wetland filling and dredging projects subject to section 404 of the Clean Water Act (33 USC 1251 *et seq.*), construction, maintenance, and operation of dams and hydroelectric plants; Federal Energy Regulatory Commission-licensed hydropower projects authorized under the Federal Power Act (16 USC 791a *et seq.*); Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management timber, grazing, and recreation management activities; Environmental Protection Agency-authorized discharges under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System of the Clean Water Act; U.S. Housing and Urban Development projects; U.S. Bureau of Reclamation projects; and National Park Service activities. Because there are various policies, directives, and regulations providing management direction to Federal agencies and opportunities to conserve bull trout, *e.g.*, roadless area conservation on Forest Service lands (66 FR 3244), we provide the following types of activities as examples.

Bull Trout Interim Conservation Guidance. The purpose of the Bull Trout Interim Conservation Guidance is to provide U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service biologists with a tool that is useful in conducting Endangered Species Act activities, including section 7 consultations, negotiating Habitat Conservation Plans that culminate in the issuance of section 10(a)(1)(B)-incidental take permits (see section 10(a)(1) discussion below), issuing recovery permits, and providing technical assistance in forest practice rule development and other interagency bull trout conservation and recovery efforts. This document is not intended to supersede any biological opinion that has been completed for Federal agency

actions. Rather, it should be used as another tool to assist in consultation on those actions.

PACFISH/INFISH. Land management plans for the Bureau of Land Management and Forest Service lands within the range of bull trout have been amended by the Interim Strategy for Managing Anadromous Fish-producing Watersheds in Eastern Oregon and Washington, Idaho, and Portions of California (PACFISH; USDA and USDI 1995a) and the Interim Strategy for Managing Fish-producing Watersheds in Eastern Oregon and Washington, Idaho, Western Montana and Portions of Nevada (INFISH; USDA and USDI 1995b). PACFISH, developed by the Bureau of Land Management and Forest Service, is intended to be an ecosystem-based, aquatic habitat and riparian-area management strategy for Pacific salmon, steelhead, and sea-run cutthroat trout habitat on lands administered by the two agencies that are outside the area subject to the Northwest Forest Plan. INFISH was developed by the Forest Service to provide an interim strategy for inland native fish in areas outside those where PACFISH and the Northwest Forest Plan apply. We issued a programmatic non-jeopardy biological opinion on land and resource management plans of the Bureau of Land Management and Forest Service, as amended by PACFISH and INFISH, for the Klamath and Columbia River population segments of bull trout that endorsed implementation of additional commitments made by the two agencies (USFWS 1998a). The commitments included habitat restoration and improvement; standards and guidelines of PACFISH and INFISH; evaluation of key and priority watershed networks; completion of watershed analysis and monitoring; establishing goals for long-term conservation and recovery; and conducting section 7 consultation at the watershed level. The biological opinion also identified additional actions to help ensure conservation of bull trout. Consultations for site-specific actions are continuing, as are consultations for land and resource management plans in other bull trout population segments.

In December, 1998, the regional executives for the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, National Marine Fisheries Service, U.S. Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management chartered The Interagency Implementation Team. This Team is integral to the implementation of PACFISH and INFISH, under the direction of the regional executives, and is responsible for coordinating implementation of the biological opinions on the effects of the aquatic conservation strategies on listed

salmon, steelhead and bull trout. The Team has directed the development of a PACFISH/INFISH Monitoring Task Team to develop a monitoring program for tracking implementation and effectiveness of PACFISH/INFISH.

Northwest Forest Plan. On April 13, 1994, the Secretaries of the Department of Agriculture and the Department of the Interior adopted the Northwest Forest Plan for management of late-successional forests within the range of the northern spotted owl (USDA 1994a, b). This plan contains objectives, standards, and guidelines to provide for a functional late-successional and old-growth forest ecosystem. Included in the plan is an Aquatic Conservation Strategy involving riparian reserves, key watersheds, watershed analysis, and habitat restoration. We issued a programmatic non-jeopardy biological opinion on the plan for the Coastal-Puget Sound, Columbia River, and Klamath River population segments of bull trout (USFWS 2000). The biological opinion also identified additional actions to be taken by the Federal land managers to help ensure conservation of bull trout. These actions included clearly documenting that proposed actions are consistent with the aquatic conservation strategy objectives, developing and implementing guidance for reducing effects of road management programs on bull trout, and responding quickly to mining notices on lands administered by the Bureau of Land Management in order to advise operators how to prevent adverse effects to bull trout. Consultations for site-specific actions are ongoing.

Section 10(a)(1) Permits. Permits, authorized under section 10(a)(1) of the Endangered Species Act, may be issued to carry out otherwise prohibited activities involving endangered and threatened wildlife under certain circumstances. Permits are available for scientific purposes to enhance the propagation or survival of a species and for incidental "take" (harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect a listed species) in connection with otherwise lawful activities. Private landowners seeking permits for incidental take offer a means of protecting bull trout habitat through the voluntary development of Habitat Conservation Plans and Safe Harbor Agreements.

Habitat Conservation Plans. Incidental take permits are required when non-Federal activities will result in "take" of threatened or endangered species. A

habitat conservation plan must accompany an application for an incidental take permit. The purpose of the Habitat Conservation Planning process is to ensure there is adequate minimization and mitigation of effects from the authorized incidental take. The purpose of the incidental take permit is to authorize the incidental take of a listed species.

As one example, the Plum Creek Timber Company developed a Habitat Conservation Plan with us addressing bull trout and other native salmonids occurring on over 688,500 hectares (1.7 million acres) of corporate lands, primarily in the Columbia River basin. The majority of the land under consideration occurs in Montana (87 percent) with the remainder in Idaho and Washington. Because silvicultural activities, logging road construction and maintenance, and open range cattle grazing by the Plum Creek Timber Company may result in harm to bull trout, seven categories of conservation commitments were included in the Habitat Conservation Plan. The seven categories are: (1) road management, (2) riparian management, (3) livestock grazing, (4) land-use planning, (5) legacy management and other restoration opportunities, (6) administration and implementation measures, and (7) monitoring and adaptive management. The conservation benefits of activities in the seven categories include reducing sediment delivery to streams from roads and grazing, increasing canopy cover in riparian areas, restoring stream bank integrity and overall habitat complexity, and providing fish passage at road culverts and water diversion structures.

In Washington, the Washington Department of Natural Resources developed a Habitat Conservation Plan that was adopted on January 1, 1999. The plan covers the approximately 647,500 hectares (1.6 million acres) of forested State trust lands that lie within the range of the northern spotted owl. The Habitat Conservation Plan contains riparian conservation strategies that were designed to protect salmonid and riparian species for lands west of the Cascade Mountains crest. It includes a streamside no-harvest buffer strategy, a minimal-harvest area for ecosystem restoration, and a low-harvest area for selective removal of single trees or groups of trees and thinning and salvage operations. In addition to riparian buffers, road management standards were developed to ensure that mass-wasting (erosion and landslides) is not artificially accelerated and that sediment delivery remains near natural levels. The Habitat Conservation Plan

also includes monitoring and adaptive management components. The minimization and mitigation actions of the plan will address habitat requirements of bull trout and cumulatively will reduce the adverse effects to bull trout in comparison to previous forest management practices (USFWS 1998b).

Safe Harbor Agreements. Safe Harbor Agreements between the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and non-Federal landowners are another voluntary mechanism to encourage conservation of listed species and authorize incidental take permits. In general, these agreements provide (1) conservation benefits for listed species that would otherwise not occur except for the agreement, and (2) Endangered Species Act regulatory assurances to the landowner through a section 10 permit. Safe Harbor Agreements are intended for landowners who have few or no listed species (or listed species' suitable habitat) on their property, but who would be willing to manage their property in such a way that listed species may increase on their lands, as long as they are able to conduct their intended land-use activities. An example of how Safe Harbor Agreements may be used to further bull trout conservation can be found with fish passage barriers in streams. If a landowner owns a stream with a fish passage barrier that prevents access to their property by bull trout, they may be unwilling to remove the barrier, and thereby allow access by bull trout, for fear of the "take" prohibitions under section 9 of the Endangered Species Act and potential restrictions on land-use activities. Under a Safe Harbor Agreement, the landowner would agree to removal of the barrier, allow bull trout access to their property, and the landowner and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service would negotiate other conservation measures necessary to ensure suitable bull trout habitat conditions are maintained on the property while allowing the landowner's land-use activities to occur. The landowner would receive a section 10 permit authorizing incidental take of bull trout consistent with the agreed upon conservation measures in the Safe Harbor Agreement. Safe Harbor Agreements for bull trout may be developed in the future.

Clean Water Act. The Clean Water Act (33 USC 1251 *et seq.*) provides some regulatory mechanisms for protection and restoration of water quality in waters that support bull trout. Under sections 303 and 304, states or the Environmental Protection Agency set water quality standards, which combine designated beneficial uses and criteria established to protect uses. States or the Environmental Protection Agency designate water bodies that are failing water

quality standards as water quality limited under section 303(d) (e.g., Appendix 1), and are required to develop management plans. Management plans include total maximum daily loads with implementation plans that define site-specific actions and timelines for meeting water quality goals (65 FR 43586). The total maximum daily loads assess and allocate all the point and nonpoint sources of pollutants within a watershed. Best management practices are used with total maximum daily loads to address nonpoint sources of pollution, such as mining, forestry, and agriculture. Regulatory authority to enforce the best management practices, however, varies among the states. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency requests that states give higher priority to polluted waters that are sources of drinking water or support listed species, when developing total maximum daily loads and implementation plans (65 FR 43586).

In accordance with section 319 of the Clean Water Act, states also develop programs to address nonpoint sources of pollution such as agriculture, forestry, and mining. The effectiveness of controlling water pollution from these activities has been mixed. The State of Washington monitored the effectiveness of riparian prescriptions under past forest practices regulations in meeting water quality temperature criteria for streams on forest lands and concluded that regulations for stream shading were inadequate to meet criteria (Sullivan *et al.* 1990).

Northwest Power Planning Council Fish and Wildlife Program.

Congress, through the Pacific Northwest Electric Power Planning and Conservation Act of 1980 (16 USC 839), directed the Northwest Power Planning Council to develop a Fish and Wildlife Program. The program is intended to give the citizens of Idaho, Montana, Oregon, and Washington a stronger voice in the future of electricity generated by the Federal hydropower dams in the Columbia River basin and fish and wildlife affected by the dams and their operation.

One of the Northwest Power Planning Council's major responsibilities is to develop a program to protect and rebuild fish and wildlife populations affected by hydropower development in the Columbia River basin. State, Tribal, and local governments often work closely with the Northwest Power Planning Council as it develops power and fish and wildlife plans. The Bonneville Power Administration provides funding for implementation of the Council's Fish and

Wildlife Program. In 2000, the Council amended its Fish and Wildlife Program to include development of subbasin plans. Subbasin planning, beginning in 2002, is a means for identifying projects that will be funded to protect, mitigate, and enhance the Columbia River basin's fish and wildlife resources. These plans are viewed as crucial efforts for implementing the Endangered Species Act responsibilities of the Bonneville Power Administration, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, and the Bureau of Reclamation in the Columbia River basin.

The primary objective of subbasin planning is to develop a unifying element for implementation of the Northwest Power Planning Council's Fish and Wildlife Program. It will also assist in the implementation of Endangered Species Act recovery activities. One of the goals of the subbasin planning process is to provide specific products that can be integrated directly into the Endangered Species Act recovery planning process. We will provide specific geographic area bull trout recovery plan to the applicable subbasin planning teams that have the responsibility for developing subbasin plans.

Federal Caucus Fish and Wildlife Plan. The Federal Caucus is a group of nine Federal agencies, formed as a result of the Federal Columbia Power System Biological Opinion, that have responsibilities for natural resources affecting species listed under the Endangered Species Act. The agencies are the National Marine Fisheries Service, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Bureau of Reclamation, Bonneville Power Administration, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Bureau of Indian Affairs, Forest Service, Bureau of Land Management, and Environmental Protection Agency. The Federal Caucus has drafted a basinwide recovery strategy for listed anadromous fish in the Columbia River basin which addresses management of habitat, hatcheries, harvest, and hydropower. This recovery strategy, titled 'The Conservation of Columbia River Basin Fish: Final Basin-Wide Recovery Strategy,' will provide the framework for development of recovery plans for individual species and for effects determinations for actions under consultation. As recovery plans for individual species are developed following the basinwide strategy, and measures to address biological needs of all stages of the life cycle are implemented, conditions for listed aquatic species are expected to improve sufficiently to provide for their survival and recovery. The Basin-Wide Salmon Recovery Strategy concludes that restoring tributary and

estuary habitat is key to recovering listed fish. Actions focus on restoring tributary (both Federal and non-Federal), mainstem, and estuary habitat.

For long-term actions, the Basin-Wide Salmon Recovery Strategy endorses the Northwest Power Planning Council strategy of conducting subbasin assessments and developing subbasin plans and prioritizing actions based on those plans. Once the assessments are complete, the Federal agencies will participate with State agencies, local governments, Tribes and stakeholders to develop subbasin plans. Draft subbasin summaries were used extensively in the preparation of the bull trout recovery plan.

While the salmon recovery framework has only recently been adopted, and thus the benefits of this recovery framework have not yet been realized, we envision significant improvements in habitat conditions for listed salmonids as recovery activities are implemented. Because bull trout often use the same areas, we expect bull trout to similarly benefit from improved habitat conditions.

U.S. Department of Agriculture. The U.S. Department of Agriculture offers landowners financial, technical, and educational assistance to implement conservation practices on privately owned land. Using this help, farmers and ranchers apply practices that reduce soil erosion, improve water quality, and enhance forest land, wetlands, grazing lands, and wildlife habitat. U.S. Department of Agriculture assistance also helps individuals and committees restore after floods, fires, or other natural disasters.

This assistance is provided to landowners via Farm Bill programs administered by the U.S. Department of Agriculture, Farm Service Agency and the Natural Resources Conservation Service. The implementation of practices associated with these programs may improve conditions for bull trout. In particular, the Conservation Reserve Enhancement Program is targeted to areas in Oregon and Washington where other listed fish occur and may provide direct benefits to bull trout.

The Conservation Reserve Easement Program is an addition to the Conservation Reserve Program. A Conservation Reserve Enhancement Program for the State of Oregon and the State of Washington was approved October 1998,

in a Memorandum of Agreements between the United States Department of Agriculture, the Commodity Credit Corporation and the states of Oregon and Washington. The Conservation Reserve Easement Program is a partnership between Federal agencies, State agencies, and private landowners. Land enrolled in this program is removed from production and grazing, under 10 to 15 year contracts. In return, landowners receive annual rental, incentive, maintenance and cost share payments.

In Washington, eligible stream designations were originally based on spawning habitat for stocks designated as critical or depressed under the 1993 Salmon and Steelhead Stock Inventory. Approximately 9,656 kilometers (6,000 miles) of eligible streams were included. Recent changes allow for the nomination of additional stream segments where riparian habitat is a significant limiting factor, and a new cap of 16,093 kilometers (10,000 miles) of eligible streams.

Other Farm Bill programs encourage farmers to convert highly erodible cropland or other environmentally sensitive acreage to native vegetative cover, provide incentives for landowners to restore function and value to degraded wetlands on a long-term or permanent basis, assist landowners with habitat restoration and management activities specifically targeting fish and wildlife (including threatened and endangered species), provide technical and financial assistance to farmers and ranchers that face threats to soil, water, and related natural resources, and support forest management practices on privately owned, nonindustrial forest lands.

APPENDIX 6.

Glossary of Technical Terms

Adaptive trait

Characteristics that improve an individual's survival and fitness.

Adfluvial bull trout

Bull trout that migrate from tributary streams to a lake or reservoir to mature (one of three migratory bull trout life history forms, the others being anadromous and fluvial forms). Adfluvial bull trout return to a tributary to spawn..

Age class

A group of individuals of a species that have the same age, *e.g.*, 1 year old, 2 year old, etc.

Aggradation/Aggrading stream

A stream that is actively building up its channel or floodplain by being supplied with more bedload than it is capable of transporting.

Alluvial

Pertaining to or composed of silts and clays (usually) deposited by a stream or flowing water. Alluvial deposits may occur after a flood event.

Alluvial fan

A sedimentary deposit located at a topographic break such as the base of a mountain front, escarpment, or valley side, that is composed of streamflow and/or debris flow sediments and that has the shape of a fan, either fully or partially extended.

Anadromous (fish)

A fish that is born in fresh water, migrates to the ocean to grow and live as an adult, and then returns to freshwater to spawn (reproduce). Anadromous bull trout are one of three migratory bull trout life history forms, the others being adfluvial and fluvial forms.

Artificial propagation

The use of artificial procedures to spawn adult fish and raise the resulting progeny in fresh water for release into the natural environment, either directly from the hatchery or by transfer into another area.

Bedload

Sediment particles that are moved on or immediately above the stream bed, such as the larger heavier particles (gravel, boulders) rolled along the bottom; the part of the load that is not continuously in suspension.

Braided channel/Braided stream

A stream that forms an interlacing network of branching and recombining channels separated by islands and channel bars. Generally a sign of stream disequilibrium resulting from transportation of excessive rock and sediment from upstream areas and characteristic of an aggrading stream in a wide channel on a floodplain.

Bycatch

Organisms that are incidentally caught in the process of hunting or fishing for another target species.

Bypass system (fish)

Structure in a dam that provides a route for fish to move through or around a dam without going through the turbines.

Canopy cover (of a stream)

Vegetation projecting over a stream, including crown cover (generally more than 1 meter [3.3 feet] above the water surface) and overhang cover (less than 1 meter [3.3 feet] above the water).

Channel morphology

The physical dimension, shape, form, pattern, profile, and structure of a stream channel.

Channel stability

The ability of a stream, over time and in the present climate, to transport the sediment and flows produced by its watershed in such a manner that the stream maintains its dimension, pattern, and profile without either aggrading or degrading.

Channelization

The straightening and deepening of a stream channel to permit the water to move faster, to reduce flooding, or to drain wetlands.

Char (*also* charr)

A fish belonging to the genus *Salvelinus* and related to both the trout and salmon. The bull trout, Dolly Varden trout, and the Mackinaw trout (or lake trout) are all members of the char family. Char live in the icy waters (both fresh and marine) of North America and Europe.

Complex interacting groups

Multiple local populations within a geographic area having connectivity that allows for individuals from each of these populations the opportunity to interact with one another.

Connectivity (stream)

Suitable stream conditions that allow fish and other aquatic organisms to move freely upstream and downstream. Habitat linkages that connect to other habitat areas.

Core area

The combination of core habitat (*i.e.*, habitat that could supply all elements for the long-term security of bull trout) and a core population (a group of one or more local bull trout populations that exist within core habitat) constitutes the basic unit on which to gauge recovery. Core areas require both habitat and bull trout to function, and the number (replication) and characteristics of local populations inhabiting a core area provide a relative indication of the core area's likelihood to persist. In most cases, core areas are presumed to reflect the metapopulation structure of bull trout (see "metapopulation," below).

Core habitat

Habitat that encompasses spawning and rearing habitat (resident populations), with the addition of foraging, migrating, and overwintering habitat if the population includes migratory fish. Core habitat is defined as habitat that contains, or if restored would contain, all of the essential physical elements to provide for the security of and allow for the full expression of life history forms of one or more local populations of bull trout. Core habitat may include currently unoccupied habitat if that habitat contains essential elements for bull trout to persist or is deemed critical to recovery.

Core population

A group of one or more bull trout local populations that exist within core habitat.

Deposition (stream)

The settlement or accumulation of material out of the water column and onto the stream bed. Occurs when the energy of flowing water is unable to support the load of suspended sediment.

Discharge (stream)

With reference to stream flow, the quantity of water that passes a given point in a measured unit of time, such as cubic meters per second or, often, cubic feet per second.

Distinct population segment

A distinct population segment is a population subset of a vertebrate species or subspecies that meets the tests of discreteness and significance under the joint policy of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and National Marine Fisheries Service (61 FR 4722). A distinct population segment designated as such under a regulatory rulemaking is a “listable entity” under the Endangered Species Act.

Effective population size

The number of breeding individuals that would give rise to the same amount of random genetic drift as the actual population, if ideal conditions held. Generally speaking, the effective population size is a measure of the number of individuals that are contributing to future generations from a genetic perspective. The

effective population size is often significantly smaller than the census population size.

Entrainment

Process by which aquatic organisms are pulled through a diversion, turbine, spillway, or other device.

Extirpation

The elimination of a species from a particular local area.

Fine sediment (fines)

Sediment with particle sizes of 2.0 millimeters (0.08 inch) or less, including sand, silt, and clay.

Fish ladder

A device to help fish swim around a dam.

Floodplain

Adjacent to stream channels, areas that are typified by flat ground and are periodically submerged by floodwater.

Flow regime

The quantity, frequency and seasonal nature of water flow.

Fluvial bull trout

Bull trout that migrate from tributary streams to larger rivers to mature (one of three migratory bull trout life history forms, the others being adfluvial and anadromous forms). Fluvial bull trout migrate to tributaries to spawn.

Foraging, migration, and overwintering habitat (bull trout)

Relatively large streams and mainstem rivers, lakes or reservoirs, estuaries, and nearshore environments, where subadult and adult migratory bull trout forage, migrate, mature, or overwinter. This habitat is typically downstream from spawning and rearing habitat and contains all the physical elements to meet critical overwintering, spawning migration, and subadult and adult rearing needs. Although use of foraging, migrating, and overwintering habitat by bull trout may

be seasonal or very brief (as in some migratory corridors), it is a critical habitat component.

Fry

Young, recently hatched fish.

Head-cut

Upstream migration or deepening of a stream channel that results from cutting (*i.e.*, erosion) of the streambank by high water velocities (Armantrout 1998).

Headwaters

The source of a stream. Headwater streams are the small swales, creeks, and streams that are the origin of most rivers. These small streams join together to form larger streams and rivers or run directly into larger streams and lakes.

Hooking mortality

Death of a fish from stress or injury after it is hooked and reeled in, then released back to the water.

Hybridization

Any crossing of individuals of different genetic composition, typically different species, that result in hybrid offspring.

Hyporheic zone

Area of saturated sediment and gravel beneath and beside streams and rivers where groundwater and surface water mix. Water movement is mainly in a downstream direction.

Legacy effects

Impacts from past activities (usually a land use) that continue to affect a stream or watershed in the present day.

Local population

A group of bull trout that spawn within a particular stream or portion of a stream system. Multiple local populations may exist within a core area. A local population is considered to be the smallest group of fish that is known to

represent an interacting reproductive unit. For most waters where specific information is lacking, a local population may be represented by a single headwater tributary or complex of headwater tributaries. Gene flow may occur between local populations (*e.g.*, those within a core population), but is assumed to be infrequent compared with that among individuals within a local population.

Management unit (bull trout)

A subset of a listed entity that is defined by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service for administrative and management purposes, usually to manage recovery for a species that is broadly distributed and that may experience a wide range of threats and management authorities across its distribution. In the case of bull trout, the distinct population segment was further subdivided into management units based on several factors, including biological and genetic considerations, political boundaries, and ongoing conservation efforts. In some instances, management unit boundaries were modified to maximize efficiency of established watershed groups, encompass areas of common threats, or accommodate other logistic concerns. Biologically, management units are considered groupings of bull trout for which gene flow was historically or is currently possible. Management units are utilized to more effectively target specific recovery actions, but management units are not eligible for reclassification or delisting separately from the listed entity.

Mass wasting

Loss of large amounts of material in a short period of time, *i.e.*, downward movement of land mass material or landslide.

Metapopulation

There are several different models of metapopulation dynamics, but in general a metapopulation refers to a population structure in which subpopulations may be distributed across the landscape in a patchy or semi-isolated pattern, but connectivity between these subpopulations is critical for maintaining the metapopulation as a whole. In the case of bull trout, we assumed that core areas represent the functional equivalent of a metapopulation structure for bull trout, and that the local populations within these core areas are interconnected by occasional dispersal between them and therefore share some genetic characteristics.

Migratory corridor (bull trout)

Stream reaches used by bull trout to move between habitats. A section of river or stream used by fish to access upstream spawning areas or downstream lake environments. *See also* foraging, migration, and overwinter habitat.

Migratory life history form (bull trout)

Bull trout that migrate from spawning and rearing habitat to lakes or reservoirs (adfluvial), larger rivers (fluvial), or the ocean (anadromous) to grow and mature.

Moraine

An accumulation of earth and stones carried and eventually deposited by a glacier.

Mysid

A small, shrimp-like crustacean of the order Mysidacea. Mysids are found primarily in marine waters, but there are some freshwater forms as well.

Nonnative species

Species not indigenous to an area, such as brook trout in the western United States.

Otolith(s)

Otoliths are compact, mineralized structures suspended in the interior of the inner ear of teleost (bony) fishes. Important in orientation and locomotion, otoliths grow in concentric layers (similar to the growth rings of a tree) reflecting the daily growth of the fish and essentially record the environmental conditions encountered by the individual.

Peak flow (stream)

Greatest stream discharge recorded over a specified period of time, usually a year, but often a season.

Piscivorous

Describes fish that prey on other fish for food.

Potential local population

A local population that does not currently exist, but that could exist, if spawning and rearing habitat or connectivity were restored in that area, and contribute to recovery in a known or suspected unoccupied area. Alternatively, a potential local population may be a population that is suspected to exist, but that has not yet been adequately documented.

Recovery team (bull trout)

A team of people with technical expertise in various aspects of bull trout biology from Federal and State agencies, Tribes, private industry, and interest groups responsible for assisting in the development of the bull trout recovery plan for a given management unit.

Redd

A nest constructed by female fish of salmonid species in streambed gravels where eggs are deposited and fertilization occurs. Redds can usually be distinguished in the streambed gravel by a cleared depression, and an associated mound of gravel directly downstream.

Refounding

Reestablishment of a species into previously occupied habitat.

Resident life history form (bull trout)

Bull trout that do not migrate, but that reside in tributary streams their entire lives (one of four bull trout life history forms; the other three forms are all migratory [adfluvial, fluvial, or anadromous]).

Revetment

A facing, usually of stone or concrete, that supports an embankment.

Riparian area

Area with distinctive soils and vegetation between a stream or other body of water and the adjacent upland. It includes wetlands and those portions of floodplains and valley bottoms that support riparian vegetation.

Riprap

A common type of streambank armoring or protection, formed of rocks of various sizes.

Salmonid

Fish of the family Salmonidae, including trout, salmon, chars, grayling, and whitefish. In general usage, the term most often refers to salmon, trout, and chars.

Scour

Concentrated erosive action by stream water, as on the outside curve of a bend; also, a place in a streambed swept clear by a swift current.

Seral stage

A developmental stage in ecological succession, not including the climax community.

Skidding

A logging term for pulling or dragging cut trees through the forest to a loading site.

Smolt

A juvenile salmon or steelhead migrating to the ocean and undergoing physiological changes to adapt its body from a freshwater environment to a saltwater environment.

Spawning and rearing habitat/streams/areas (bull trout)

Stream reaches and the associated watershed areas that provide all habitat components necessary for spawning and juvenile rearing for a local bull trout population. Spawning and rearing habitat generally supports multiple year classes of juveniles of resident or migratory fish and may also support subadults and adults from local populations of resident bull trout.

Spawning escapement

The number of adult fish from a specific population that survive spawning migrations and enter spawning grounds.

Spillway

The part of a dam that allows high water to flow (spill) over the dam.

Splash dam

A temporary or permanent structure in a stream channel that was historically used to store logs and water until sufficient water was retained from precipitation and runoff to transport the logs downstream when the splash dam was opened.

Stock

The fish spawning in a particular lake or stream(s) at a particular season, which to a substantial degree do not interbreed with any group spawning in a different place, or in the same place at a different season. A group of fish belonging to the same population, spawning in a particular stream in a particular season.

Subbasin

The surface area of a watershed drained by a tributary to a larger stream that is bounded by ridges or other hydrologic divides and is located within the larger watershed drained by the larger stream (Armantrout 1998).

Sublittoral

The marine zone extending from the depth of the intertidal (littoral) to the outer edge of the continental shelf at a depth of about 200 meters.

Subpopulation (bull trout)

A reproductively isolated group of bull trout spawning within a particular area of a river system; the basic unit of analysis used in the initial listing of bull trout, but not used extensively in the recovery plan.

Subwatershed

Topographic perimeter of the catchment area of a stream tributary.

Take

Activities that harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect; or attempt to engage in any such conduct to a listed (Endangered Species Act) species.

Thermocline

In the summer, the layer of water in a lake which exhibits the greatest unit decrease in temperature per unit increase in depth; the transitional zone between the upper, warmer layer of water (epilimnion) and the cooler, denser, lower layer (hypolimnion) of water.

Toe slope

The base of a slope along a bank or other geographic feature where a gentle incline changes abruptly to a steeper gradient (Armantrout 1998).

Transplantation

Moving wild fish from one stream system to another without the use of artificial propagation.

Trap and haul

An operation to physically move migratory fish upstream around a barrier that does not have a fish ladder or other passage to allow spawning. Fish are generally captured in a trap and transported by truck to a release site upstream of the barrier.

Watershed

The area of land from which rainfall (and/or snow melt) drains into a stream or other water body. Watersheds are also sometimes referred to as drainage basins or drainage areas. Ridges of higher ground generally form the boundaries between watersheds. At these boundaries, rain falling on one side flows toward the low point of one watershed, while rain falling on the other side of the boundary flows toward the low point of a different watershed.

Woody debris

Woody material such as trees and shrubs; includes all parts of a tree such as root system, bowl, and limbs. Large woody debris refers to the woody material whose smallest diameter is greater than 10 centimeters (4 inches) and whose length is greater than 1 meter (3.3 feet).